



Universiteit
Leiden
The Netherlands

A Grammar of Lepcha

Plaisier, H.

Citation

Plaisier, H. (2006, February 16). *A Grammar of Lepcha*. Retrieved from <https://hdl.handle.net/1887/4379>

Version: Not Applicable (or Unknown)

License: [Licence agreement concerning inclusion of doctoral thesis in the Institutional Repository of the University of Leiden](#)

Downloaded from: <https://hdl.handle.net/1887/4379>

Note: To cite this publication please use the final published version (if applicable).

A Grammar of Lepcha

Proefschrift

ter verkrijging van

de graad van Doctor aan de Universiteit Leiden

op gezag van de Rector Magnificus Dr. D.D. Breimer,

hoogleraar in de faculteit der Wiskunde en

Natuurwetenschappen en die der Geneeskunde,

volgens besluit van het College voor Promoties

te verdedigen op donderdag 16 februari 2006

klokke 16.15

door

Heleen Plaisier

geboren te Eindhoven

in 1968

Promotiecommissie:

Promotores: Prof. Dr. G.L. van Driem
Prof. Dr. F.H.H. Kortlandt

Referent: Prof. Dr. R. Bielmeier, Universität Bern (CH)

Overige leden: Prof. Dr. W.F.H. Adelaar
Prof. Dr. A.M. Lubotsky
Prof. Dr. J. Schaeken

De totstandkoming van dit proefschrift werd mede mogelijk gemaakt door financiële ondersteuning van de Nederlandse Organisatie voor Wetenschappelijk Onderzoek (NWO).

CONTENTS

LIST OF DIAGRAMS	
ABBREVIATIONS AND CONVENTIONS	
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	
CHAPTER ONE: INTRODUCTION	1
CHAPTER TWO: PHONOLOGY AND ORTHOGRAPHY	9
2.1 Vowels	10
2.2 Consonants	13
2.3 Syllables	23
2.4 Native Lepcha orthography	24
2.5 Romanisation and spelling	30
CHAPTER THREE: PARTS OF SPEECH	39
3.1 Derivational affixes	39
3.2 Gender-specific endings	41
3.3 Compounding	43
3.4 Reduplication	44
3.5 Causative verbs	44
CHAPTER FOUR: NOMINAL MORPHOLOGY	47
4.1 Number	48
4.2 The definite and indefinite article	54
4.3 Pronouns	60
4.3.1 Personal pronouns	60
4.3.2 Demonstrative pronouns	62
4.3.3 Interrogative and relative pronouns	66
4.3.4 Indefinite pronouns	68
4.4 The ablative suffix	71
4.5 The lative suffix	73
4.6 The genitive and comitative suffixes	76
4.7 The locative suffix	81
4.8 The dative suffix	83
4.9 Adjectives	86
4.10 Comparative and superlative constructions	87
4.11 Numerals	88
4.12 Telling time	93
CHAPTER FIVE: VERBAL MORPHOLOGY	97
5.1 Verb stems	97
5.2 Permission, ability, opportunity, exigency	100
5.3 Verbs 'to be'	104
5.4 Negation	106
5.5 Gerund and the participle	107
5.6 Infinitive	109
5.7 Aorist	111
5.8 Progressive tense	113

CONTENTS

5.9 Non-preterite tense	113
5.10 The factitive marker with verbs	115
5.11 Aktionsart auxiliaries	116
5.11.1 The perfect auxiliary	116
5.11.2 The resultative auxiliary	117
5.11.3 The exhaustive auxiliary	118
5.11.4 The completive auxiliary	119
5.12 The locative suffix with verbs	119
5.13 The ablative suffix with verbs	120
CHAPTER SIX: CLAUSE-FINAL PARTICLES, COORDINATION AND SUBORDINATION	125
6.1 The request particle	125
6.2 The authorative particle	126
6.3 The dubitative particle	126
6.4 The possibility particle.....	127
6.5 The inferential particle.....	127
6.6 The certainty particle	129
6.7 The discovery particle.....	130
6.8 The reported speech particles	131
6.9 Coordination	132
6.10 Subordination	135
6.11 The factitive marker	137
TEXT ONE: THE MOUNTAIN DEVIL.....	139
TEXT TWO: THE STORY OF THE JACKAL.....	159
TEXT THREE: THE GREAT KING GYEBÚ	163
TEXT FOUR: TWO LEPCHA GIRLS.....	179
GLOSSARY	189
BIBLIOGRAPHY	219
INDEX	225

LIST OF DIAGRAMS

Diagram 1: Lepcha vowel phonemes.....	10
Diagram 2: Lepcha consonant phonemes.....	14
Diagram 3: Syllable-initial consonant clusters.....	23
Diagram 4: Original order of the syllabary.....	25
Diagram 5: Consonant letters.....	27
Diagram 6: Vowel signs.....	27
Diagram 7: Final consonant signs.....	28
Diagram 8: Affixed consonant signs.....	29
Diagram 9: Retroflex consonants.....	29
Diagram 10: Romanisation systems.....	34-35
Diagram 11: Transliteration and transcription of Lepcha vowels.....	36
Diagram 12: Personal pronouns.....	60
Diagram 13: Singular oblique pronouns.....	61
Diagram 14: Lepcha numbers.....	92

ABBREVIATIONS AND CONVENTIONS

1	first person
2	second person
3	third person
ABL	ablative marker
adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
AST	assertive particle
AUTH	authorative particle
cf.	<i>confer</i> , compare
CMP	completive auxiliary
CRT	certainty particle
D	dual
DAT	dative suffix
DEF	definite article
DSC	discovery particle
DUB	dubitative particle
ed.	editor
eds.	editors
et al	<i>et alii</i> , and others
etc.	<i>et cetera</i> , and the rest
EXH	exhaustive auxiliary
FCT	factitive marker
GEN	genitive suffix
GER	gerund marker
IFR	inferential particle
IND	individuative suffix
INF	infinitival marker
LOC	locative suffix
n.	noun
NEG	negative marker
NPR	non-preterite tense marker
num.	numeral
OBL	oblique form
P	plural

ABBREVIATIONS AND CONVENTIONS

pf.	prefix
PL.H	human plural suffix
PL.NH	non-human plural suffix
PRF	perfect auxiliary
PRG	progressive tense marker
pron.	pronoun
PSB	possibility particle
PTC	participle
Q	interrogative particle
REP	reported speech particle
REQ	request particle
RES	resultative auxiliary
S	singular
sal.	salutation
sf.	suffix
v.	verb
viz.	<i>videlicet</i> , or by substitution
vs.	versus
[]	phonetic transcription; analytical note
//	phonological transcription
< >	morphological transcription
<i>italics</i>	transliteration
~	alternates (allomorphs, allophones)
–	word-internal morpheme boundary or boundary between a word and an affix in glosses
·	syllable boundary in phonetic transcription
-	syllable boundary in transliteration
⊙	vowel sign in Lepcha orthography
⊙	consonant sign in Lepcha orthography
⊙	vowel or consonant sign in Lepcha orthography

ABBREVIATIONS AND CONVENTIONS

Nepali is transliterated from the devanāgarī script conventionally in accordance with Indological tradition:

	a		ā	
	i		ī	
	u		ū	
		ṛ		
	e		ai	
	o		au	
	ṁ		ḥ	
k	kh	g	gh	ṅ
c	ch	j	jh	ñ
ṭ	ṭh	ḍ	ḍh	ṇ
t	th	d	dh	n
p	ph	b	bh	m
y	r	l	v	
	ś	ṣ	s	
		h		

The modern pronunciations of Dzongkha and Dränjoke are given in Roman Dzongkha, the official system for the phonological representation of Dzongkha, described in van Driem 1998.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Much gratitude is due to རྩུལ་ རྩུལ་ འུ་ཤིཔ་མུ་, ལོ་ ལྷ་ལཱ་ ལོ་ལཱ་ ལོ་ལཱ་ Drúp Shuzóng Támsáng and ལོ་ལཱ་ ལོ་ལཱ་ Dorji Tshering, who provided most of the material on which the present study is based and who devoted a lot of time and patience to my research. I would like to thank ལོ་ལཱ་ ལོ་ལཱ་ Lyángsóng Támsáng, ལོ་ལཱ་ ལོ་ལཱ་ Chúni Támsáng, ལོ་ལཱ་ ལོ་ལཱ་ Nakú Tshering, ལོ་ལཱ་ ལོ་ལཱ་ Thúpden Námchú and Mikú, Songfel and the late Emú Foning for assisting me with practical advice and offering moral support during my sojourns in Kalimpong and Sikkim. I would also like to thank my hosts in Ngáse, Mane Gomba, Passingdang and Gangtok for providing me with homes away from home. This book has benefited enormously from the insightful font design of Jason Glavy, who developed the Lepcha font used that is used here. Finally, I would like to express my gratitude to Richard Keith Sprigg and his late wife, the dear Ray Margaret Sprigg, for their enduring support and friendship.

CHAPTER ONE

INTRODUCTION

Lepcha is a Tibeto-Burman language spoken in Sikkim, Darjeeling district in West Bengal in India, in Ilām district in Nepal, and in a few villages of Samtse district in south-western Bhutan. The tribal homeland of the Lepcha people is referred to as ལྷ་མཚོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ *ne máyel lyáng* ‘hidden paradise’ or ལྷ་མཚོ་མཚོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ *ne máyel málúk lyáng* ‘land of eternal purity’. Most of the areas in which Lepcha is spoken today were once Sikkimese territory. The kingdom of Sikkim used to comprise all of present-day Sikkim and most of Darjeeling district. Kalimpong, now in Darjeeling district, used to be part of Bhutan, but was lost to the British and became ‘British Bhutan’ before being incorporated into Darjeeling district. The Lepcha are believed to be the aboriginal inhabitants of Sikkim.

Today the Lepcha people constitute a minority of the population of modern Sikkim, which has been flooded by immigrants from Nepal. Although the Lepcha themselves estimate their number of speakers to be over 50,000, the total number is likely to be much smaller. According to the 1991 Census of India, the most recent statistical profile for which the data have been disaggregated, the total number of mother tongue Lepcha speakers across the nation is 29,854. While their distribution is largely in Sikkim and the northern districts of West Bengal, there are no reliable speaker numbers for these areas. In the Darjeeling district there are many Lepcha villages particularly in the area surrounding the small town of Kalimpong. There are reportedly roughly a hundred Lepcha households in Ilām, mainly in the villages Nāmsālīn, Phikkal, Kolbuñ, Pañckanyā, Kanyām, Śrī Antu and Cisopānī, and approximately a thousand Lepcha speakers in Samtse District, in Denchukha north of the ’Amochu in Bhutan (van Driem 2001: 819). Although Lepcha is unmistakably a Tibeto-Burman language, its exact position within Tibeto-Burman is still unclear.

The English name ‘Lepcha’ derives from Nepali *lāpce* or *lāpcā*, which originally had the derogatory connotation of ‘inarticulate

speech'. Nowadays, the term 'Lepcha' is widely used without this connotation. The Lepcha call themselves རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ (རྩོམ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་) *mútuncí róngkup rumkup* 'children of the Róng and of God', or simply རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ *róngkup* 'children of the Róng'. Alternatively, the Lepcha people may call themselves རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ *róng lágít* 'the Róng tribe'. The Lepcha word for 'language' is རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ *láríng*, and the Lepcha call their own language རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ *róngríng*.

The Lepcha divide themselves into four main groups according to the region they inhabit. The Lepcha from Kalimpong, Kurseong, Mirik and Darjeeling are known as རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ *támsángmú*, the Lepcha from Sikkim are called རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ *renjóngmú*. The smaller group of Lepcha living in the Ilām district of Nepal are known as རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ *lilámmú* and the Lepcha who live in རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ *prolyáng* 'Bhutan' are referred to as རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ *promú*. The Lepcha of Kalimpong, though formerly part of Bhutanese territory, are Támsángmú and not Promú. There is some debate over whether the Lepcha from Kurseong, Darjeeling and Mirik should belong to the Renjóngmú or the Támsángmú Lepcha, as some people use the name Támsángmú strictly for Lepcha living in and around Kalimpong.

The four groups do not represent four different dialects; although there are regional differences between the Lepcha spoken in different areas, these differences are largely lexical. The Lepcha spoken by the Renjóngmú is generally more influenced by Dränjoke than the Lepcha spoken by the Támsángmú, which in itself is more influenced by Nepali than the Lepcha spoken by the Renjóngmú. Since there is a lot of mobility between Sikkim and Darjeeling district, with children going to school or college or finding jobs in areas different from where their parents live, the regional influences are not always straightforward. However, the sense of regional identity is strong enough, buttressed by a number of real cultural differences, between the Renjóngmú and the Támsángmú to make the distinction between these major groups within the Lepcha speaking community a vital one.

In Sikkim, Lepcha is one of eleven official languages. Lepcha is taught in schools, there is a textbook department that develops official learning materials, there is a Lepcha edition of a government newspaper, the Sikkim Herald, and the government radio station broadcasts news bulletins and cultural programmes in the Lepcha language. A special area in North Sikkim holds the རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ Dzongú [*zónggú*] Lepcha reserve, a Lepcha conservation area where but few outsiders have

been allowed to settle. In the Darjeeling district, the Lepcha have had to struggle to get official status in order to receive special benefits and to be able to have air time on the official radio stations. The Lepcha Association, which is a social and cultural organisation with several different branches and chapters in which all Lepchas have organised themselves, coordinates evening classes in the Lepcha language and other social and cultural initiatives, such as festivals and archery competitions.

The Lepcha are divided into various clans or families known as ཏུལ་ *putsho* and each clan has its own ཨ་ *dâ* ‘lake’ and ལུ་ *cú* ‘mountain peak’. The *cú* are regularly honoured in ལུ་ རྩེ་ *cú rumfát* ‘mountain worship’ ceremonies. In the Kalimpong area, the origin of the clan names is traditionally explained as follows: when the evil king ཨ་ལུ་ལྷ་ *hlaso múng* ‘Lhasa Devil’ was killed by རྩེ་ལུ་ལྷ་ *támsáng thing* ‘Lord Támsáng’, then Lord Támsáng expressed his gratitude to 108 men by bestowing upon each of them an honorary title, as well as placing each of them under the protection of a specific lake and mountain peak. The honorary titles developed into clan names, such as ལུ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ *lúksómmú*, ལུ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ *simíkmú*, ལུ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ *sadámú*. Although most Lepcha know to which *putsho* they belong, they do not always know the corresponding *dâ* and *cú*. Today the full clan name may be shortened, e.g. *Simik* from ལུ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ *simíkmú*, anglicised and shortened, e.g. *Fonying* from ལུ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ *fonyung rumsóngmú*, or the clan name may be substituted by the generic epithet ‘Lepcha’, e.g. *Dorji Tshering Lepcha*.

The native Lepcha female dress, ལུ་ལྷ་ *dumdem*, also spelt ལུ་ལྷ་ *dumdyám*, is usually made of smooth cotton or silk and consists of one large piece of material that is folded over one shoulder, pinned at the other shoulder and held in place with a waistband over which part of the remaining material hangs. The ankle-length *dumdem* is worn over a long-sleeved blouse, which may be of a contrasting colour. The native male dress is knee-length and consists of a multicoloured hand-woven cloth called ལུ་ལྷ་ *dumprá* ‘male dress’, which is pinned together at one shoulder and held in place by a waistband. The *dumprá* is usually worn over a simple white shirt and knee-length trousers. The men wear the ལུ་ལྷ་ *thyáktuk* ‘cap’, a flat round hat with stiff black velvet sides and a softer top of coloured material with a knot in the centre. The more traditional hat, now rarely seen, is made of bamboo and rattan strips and is cone-shaped with a narrow brim.

The Lepcha are known as excellent weavers and they weave the ཨྱ *dum* ‘cloth’ for the *dumprá* themselves. The Lepcha are also famous for their unique knowledge of the medicinal properties of local plants. Bamboo, འཕྱུ བལ, plays an important role in Lepcha life and the Lepcha sometimes refer to themselves as the ‘brothers of the bamboo’, because of their skilful use of various kinds of bamboo and rattan in building houses, weaving baskets, constructing bridges, rafts, fences and making bows, arrows and all sorts of household utensils.

The central religious roles in the Lepcha community are traditionally occupied by the ཨྱ *mun* and འཕྱུ བལ *bóngthíng*, who both function as shamans. The *bóngthíng* is traditionally a male shaman who presides at recurring religious ceremonies and seasonal festivals and may heal acute illness. The *mun*, often but not necessarily a female shaman, is a healer who exorcises demons, helps to heal illness and guides souls to the afterlife. It is possible for a *bóngthíng* to develop into a *mun*, in Sikkim such healers are known as འཕྱུ བལ *padem*. In the eighteenth century, the Lepcha people were converted to Buddhism, although indigenous Lepcha shamanism managed to coexist with Buddhist customs and beliefs. Both Buddhist lamas and Lepcha *bóngthíngs* preside at many important ceremonies in Lepcha life, each to perform their own rituals. Since the middle of the nineteenth century, in the Darjeeling district a significant number of Lepcha people have converted to Christianity. Many Christian Lepcha people have lost their language and have distanced themselves from the old shamanistic rituals and beliefs. This stance occasionally gives rise to tension between Buddhist and Christian Lepcha.

The entire complex of Lepcha myths, legends, fables and fairytales that has been orally transmitted throughout the centuries is known as འཕྱུ བལ *lúngten sung* ‘mythology, legends’. The Lepcha have their own indigenous script which dates back to the 18th century, explained in the next chapter. Although many written Lepcha texts are adaptations of Tibetan Buddhist literature, they clearly display a Lepcha character. Further research is required in order to determine the precise nature of the influence of Lepcha oral traditions, regional folkloristic influences and Tibetan Buddhism on Lepcha literature (Plaisier 2003b, Klafkowski 1983: 172).

Archibald Campbell published a short list of Lepcha words in 1840. In 1842, the independent clergyman William Start brought more than twenty German missionaries to Darjeeling in order to start

a Christian mission post there. Although the initiative was not a lasting success, William Start and his colleague Karl Gottlieb Niebel did run a school for Lepcha children in Tukvár, near Darjeeling, for some time and translated parts of the Bible into Lepcha (Start and Niebel 1849, 1872). When Start returned to England in 1852, Niebel continued his missionary work in the area. A commemorative plaque in St. Columba's Church in Darjeeling reads: '1865. Karl G. Niebel, 23 years translator with the Lepcha, died' (Perry 1997: 31). Some of the other missionaries that Start had brought over settled in the region and started up various businesses. Joachim Stölke, for example, became a tea planter, as did his sons John and William Stölke, who together wrote an as yet unpublished extensive Lepcha-English dictionary around 1900.

At around the same time that William Start became interested in the Darjeeling area, Colonel George Byres Mainwaring of the Bengal Staff Corps made his first visit to Darjeeling. The Lepcha customs and way of life had a great impact on Mainwaring, who saw all the traits of Lepcha culture he so admired reflected in their language. He was the first to write a grammar of Lepcha, which was published in 1876. Mainwaring worked on a Lepcha dictionary as well, the manuscript of which was edited and published in 1898 by Albert Grünwedel after Mainwaring's death. Mainwaring's work has been of pivotal importance for the survival of the Lepcha language, although it has also been criticised because of its strong latinate bias.

Apart from editing Mainwaring's dictionary, Albert Grünwedel published translations of Lepcha texts based on Tibetan sources. Lawrence Waddell published an article with remarks on a number of Lepcha place names in 1892, and in an article in 1899 he translated and explained nine Lepcha songs. In his account of Tibetan Buddhism, Waddell (1895) also described Lepcha religious practices. These works were followed by different short accounts of the Lepcha language by Schott (1881), Drouin (1901) and Feer (1898).

Several studies on Lepcha culture or aspects thereof have been published, such as those by Stocks (1925), Morris (1938), Gorur (1938), Hermanns (1954) and later Klafkowski (1980, 1983), Thakur (1988) and Chattopadhyay (1990). The Austrian tibetologist René de Nebesky-Wojkowitz published extensively on the religion of the Lepcha until his early death in 1959. The most important anthropological

study of the Lepcha people and their culture remains the monumental work by Halfdan Siiger and Jørgen Rischel, published in 1967.

Notable 20th century publications on the Lepcha language consist of studies on the field of classification (Benedict 1972, Shafer 1955, Forrest 1962, Bodman 1988), orthography and inconsistencies in spelling (Haarh 1959, Sprigg 1983, 1989, 1997, 1998, Chakraborty 1978) and phonology (Sprigg 1966a, 1996b, Bodman 1989). In 1966, Prabhakar Sinha wrote an unpublished grammar of Lepcha as a Ph.D. dissertation at Deccan College in Pune.

Only after writing the present grammar was I able to understand much of Mainwaring's descriptions, shrouded as they are behind its latinate veil. The same applies *a fortiori* to the unpublished dissertation written by Sinha, which contains numerous lists but is not exceedingly insightful and usually omits descriptions of the meanings of grammatical morphemes. The articles by Haarh, Bodman and especially Sprigg are useful studies of highly specific aspects of the language.

The Lepcha Textbook Department of the Government of Sikkim and the various Lepcha Associations of Kalimpong, Darjeeling and Sikkim have been publishing periodicals, books, plays and collections of poetry in Lepcha for decades. The Lepcha author Arthur Foning published his influential book *Lepcha, My Vanishing Tribe* in 1987, and the book was reprinted in 2003. Two other outstanding Lepcha scholars, ཁྲཱུལྲཱུ་ཐཱུམ་སང་ Khárpú Támsáng and འཇཱཱེ་ལྷཱུའོ་ Dóngtshen Luksóm, have both published grammar textbooks of Lepcha written in Lepcha, i.e. Támsáng (1978), Luksóm (1981), as well as other studies. These grammar books should not be seen as comprehensive grammatical descriptions of the Lepcha language, but rather as language textbooks. Both books are of a prescriptive nature, apparently written with an audience of language learners in mind. Although both grammars appear to be based on Mainwaring's grammar of 1876, Luksóm follows Mainwaring much less closely than Támsáng does and offers several original and insightful discussions and examples.

Several dictionaries of the Lepcha language have been compiled (Grünwedel 1898a, Cemjong 1970, Kumar 1978). Khárpú Támsáng's magnificent *Lepcha English Encyclopedic Dictionary*, published in 1980, is indispensable to anyone working on Lepcha. In 1983, a *Lepcha Hindi English Dictionary* was compiled by Dóngtshen Luksóm. In 1996, an *English to Lepcha Dictionary* was published by the emi-

nant Lepcha authors ཡུ་ཤིཔ་མུ་ Úgen Shipmú, ཨི་ལཱ་ ལཱ་ཤེ་ལཱ་ Karma Lode Righimú, ལཱ་ཨི་ལཱ་ ལཱ་ཤེ་ལཱ་ Nakú Tshering Likmú and ཨི་ལཱ་ ལཱ་ཤེ་ལཱ་ ཨི་ལཱ་ལཱ་ཤེ་ལཱ་ Dorji Wángdi Kunchúdyangmú.

Ever since its first issue in 1997, the quarterly Lepcha bilingual news magazine ཨི་ལཱ་ལཱ་ *Aachuley* [ácu] published by the Lepcha Literary Organisation in Kalimpong and edited by ལཱ་ལཱ་ལཱ་ ཨི་ལཱ་ལཱ་ Lyáng-sóng Támsáng, has proven to be an important forum for contributions on Lepcha language and culture written by authors from all over the world.

The present book is a descriptive study of the Lepcha language. The data for this study were collected during several pleasant sojourns amongst the cheerful Lepcha people in Kalimpong and Sikkim between 1994 and 1998. During my research, I also investigated the history and origins of old Lepcha texts. The results of this investigation have appeared in the form of a catalogue describing the unique collection of Lepcha manuscripts kept in Leiden, the world's largest collection of Lepcha texts. This catalogue also contains an introduction to Lepcha literary history and a survey of the smaller collections of Lepcha manuscripts in London, Gangtok and Vienna.

CHAPTER TWO

PHONOLOGY AND ORTHOGRAPHY

This chapter is concerned with the organisation of sounds as linguistic units in the Lepcha language. In this chapter, the phonemes of Lepcha are represented both in the romanisation used throughout this book, as well as in a phonetic transcription in the International Phonetic Alphabet. The phonetic transcription is given between square brackets. In example sentences, the original Lepcha orthography is included. The romanisation used in this book is in fact a transliteration of the native Lepcha orthography, which is faithful to the facts of the traditional orthography. Since the transliteration is consistent with the way text is written in traditional orthography, it remains possible at all times to derive the spelling in original Lepcha orthography from the transliteration. Moreover, the use of the transliteration eases comparisons to transcribed Lepcha forms used in other publications. The transliteration used here is largely phonological, the few phonological ambiguities that arise from the transliteration are discussed in this chapter. In the chosen transliteration, syllable boundaries in multisyllabic words are indicated by a hyphen only in those cases where they cannot be predicted on the basis of the phonotactic rules described in this chapter, or when it is necessary to separate phoneme symbols which might otherwise be read as a digraph for another phoneme, e.g. ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ *lúk-hróng*, ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ *zúk-lât*. If a syllable ends in a vowel the syllable boundary is not indicated, e.g. ལྷ་ལྷ་ *lára*, ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ *lámlem*, ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ *lákrim*. In phonetic transcriptions, syllable boundaries are indicated with the symbol [·]. In glossed example sentences, a dash [-] is used to indicate a word-internal morpheme boundary or the boundary between a word and an affix.

2.1 Vowels

Lepcha has eight phonemic vowels, symbolised as *i* or *í* for [i], *e* for [e~ε], *u* for [u], *a* or *â* for [ə], *á* for [a], *ú* for [u], *o* for [o], and *ó* for [ɔ]. The vowel phonemes are presented in Diagram 1, where their phonetic values are given between square brackets and their transliteration graphemes are given in italics. The qualitative contrast between the vowels involves four degrees of vowel height dimension and three degrees in the front-back dimension. There is no phonological vowel length, although a vowel in an open syllable tends to have a longer realisation than the same vowel in a closed syllable.

	front		back
close	[i] <i>i, í</i>	[u] <i>u</i>	[u] <i>ú</i>
half-close			[o] <i>o</i>
half-open	[e~ε] <i>e</i>	[ʌ] <i>a, â</i>	[ɔ] <i>ó</i>
open		[a] <i>á</i>	

Diagram 1: Lepcha vowel phonemes

The phoneme /i/ is an unrounded close front vowel [i]. In open syllables, /i/ is often realised as [i:]. In closed syllables, /i/ is generally realised as [i] but may occasionally move toward the more central quality of [ɪ].

ṣ̄ <i>ríp</i>	[riʔp̄]	‘flower’
ṣ̄ <i>bi</i>	[bi]	‘give’
ṣ̄ <i>ʔik</i>	[ʔiʔk̄]	‘still’
ṣ̄ <i>ʔít</i>	[ʔiʔt̄]	‘create’

The phoneme /e/ varies in pronunciation between [e] and [ε] and sometimes [ɪ], especially before velar consonants. In general, we can

say that in open syllables the phoneme /e/ is realised as an unrounded half-close front vowel [e] or [ɪ] and in closed syllables the phoneme /e/ is realised as an unrounded half-open front vowel [ɛ]. However, the variation between the different allophones is in fact slightly more complex, since the realisation [ɛ] does not seem to occur before [ŋ] and [k]. Before [p], [m], [l], [n], [r], and [t] the phoneme /e/ may be realised as either [e], [ɪ] or [ɛ].

ꠄꠤ <i>pe</i>	[pe]	‘grass’
ꠄꠤꠄꠤ <i>renjóng</i>	[rɛnˈʒɔŋ]	‘Sikkim’
ꠄꠤ <i>len</i>	[lɛn]	‘than’
ꠄꠤ <i>jer</i>	[ʒɛr]	‘gold’
ꠄꠤ <i>heng</i>	[hɪŋ]	‘ginger’
ꠄꠤꠄꠤ <i>ʔámlem</i>	[ʔaˈmlɛm]	‘face’
ꠄꠤ <i>klek</i>	[kleʔkʰ]	‘force, urge’

The phoneme /á/ is an unrounded open front vowel [a], with allophones ranging to an unrounded back vowel [ɑ].

ꠄꠤꠄꠤ <i>navár</i>	[nʌˈvar]	‘boat’
ꠄꠤꠄꠤ <i>bám</i>	[bam]	‘dwell’
ꠄꠤꠄꠤ <i>ngár</i>	[ŋar]	‘slice’
ꠄꠤꠄꠤ <i>ʔákâ</i>	[ʔaˈkʌ]	‘hand’
ꠄꠤꠄꠤ <i>záti</i>	[ʒaˈti]	‘nutmeg’

The phonetic value of the phoneme /a/, represented by the transliteration graphemes *a* and *â*, varies considerably. This vowel can be described as an unrounded central vowel that usually approaches the quality of schwa [ə]. This phoneme may also be realised as an unrounded half-open central vowel [ʌ] or as an unrounded central vowel [u]. From the point of view of widespread conventions regarding the use of diacritics with the Roman script, the circumflex accent above the *a* to represent a schwa may strike many as odd. However, this convention in transliterating Lepcha script dates back to Mainwaring and stems from the peculiar role of the diacritic flourish known as the ꠄꠤ *rân* in Lepcha script and first described as a ‘circumflex’ sign by Mainwaring, a historically interesting orthographic device discussed in greater detail later in this chapter.

𐄎 <i>dâ</i>	[dʌ]	‘lake’
𐄏 <i>fâk</i>	[fəʔkʰ]	‘scrape’
𐄐 <i>vâm</i>	[vəm]	‘song’
𐄑 <i>cang</i>	[cʌŋ]	‘foster, nourish’
𐄒 <i>patung</i>	[pəʔtʰuŋ]	‘shoulder’

The phoneme /u/ is an unrounded back vowel [u], sometimes realised closer to the value of [ɨ]. The phoneme /ú/ is a rounded close back vowel [u].

𐄓 <i>ʔánum</i>	[ʔaːnum]	‘younger brother’
𐄔 <i>ru</i>	[ru]	‘cane’
𐄕 <i>ʔulbú</i>	[ʔɨlːbu]	‘salesman, seller’
𐄖 <i>dú</i>	[du]	‘umbrella’
𐄗 <i>kajú</i>	[kəːʒu]	‘dog’
𐄘 <i>thúk</i>	[tʰuʔkʰ]	‘season’
𐄙 <i>ʔút</i>	[ʔuʔtʰ]	‘otter’

The phoneme /o/ is a rounded half-close back vowel [o]. This rounded half-close back vowel is usually a bit raised, viz. [ɔ].

𐄚 <i>hlo</i>	[hlo]	‘hill’
𐄛 <i>dop</i>	[doʔpʰ]	‘burn’
𐄜 <i>go</i>	[go]	‘I’
𐄝 <i>ʔotshóng</i>	[ʔotʰɔŋ]	‘that day’

The vowel /ó/ is a rounded half-open back vowel [ɔ], usually raised, i.e. [ɔ̄].

𐄞 <i>ʔánóm</i>	[ʔaːnɔm]	‘elder sister’
𐄟 <i>món</i>	[mɔn]	‘pig’
𐄠 <i>myóng</i>	[mjɔŋ]	‘experience’
𐄡 <i>myón</i>	[mjɔn]	‘forget’
𐄢 <i>gó</i>	[gɔ]	‘be happy’
𐄣 <i>ʔót</i>	[ʔɔʔtʰ]	‘pluck, as fruits’

The distinction between the phonemes /o/ and /ó/ is clearly phonetically differentiated in reading pronunciations and the cultivated enunciations of many literate speakers. However, the distinction is lost in the speech of non-literate speakers, particularly those highly fluent in

Nepali, where no comparable phonological distinction exists. It is difficult to ascertain whether this distinction, i.e. /o/ vs. /ó/, is an original phonological distinction which is on the way out or an artificial distinction inspired by the Lepcha literary tradition, which was invented in the eighteenth century.

2.2 Consonants

The phoneme inventory of Lepcha consonants is listed in Diagram 2, with a phonetic transcription between square brackets, followed by the transliteration used throughout this book in italics. In contrast to the Lepcha vowels, the phonemic units of the consonant system match the transliteration graphemes in a straightforward one-to-one correspondence. The phonemes are briefly described below, beginning with the velar, palatal, dental, retroflex and bilabial stops and nasals, followed by fricatives, affricates, approximants, the trill and the glottal stop.

The phoneme /k/ is an unaspirated voiceless dorso-velar stop [k]. Before the vowels /i/ and /e/, /k/ is slightly palatalised [k^j]. In syllable-final position, /k/ is found to be realised as a voiceless unreleased dorso-velar stop [k̚], usually reinforced with a simultaneous glottal stop [ʔk̚], as is the case in *kakyók* [kʌ·kʲəʔk̚] ‘nine’.

ཅཱྐ <i>kacer</i>	[kʌ·cɛɾ]	‘wheat’
ལྷཱཱྒྷ <i>lúkʔál</i>	[luk·ʔal]	‘tomorrow’
ཉྐྱྒྷ <i>kít</i>	[kʲiʔk̚]	‘snatch’
རྩྐ <i>rák</i>	[raʔk̚]	‘search, examine’
ཞྐྱྒྷ <i>ʔákrím</i>	[ʔa·krim]	‘bitter’

The phoneme /kh/ is an aspirated voiceless dorso-velar stop [k^h]. The phoneme /kh/ occurs only in syllable-initial, not in syllable-final position.

ཅྐྱྒྷ <i>khék</i>	[k ^h eʔk̚]	‘freeze’
ཅྐྱྒྷ <i>khák</i>	[k ^h aʔk̚]	‘choke’
ཅྐྱྒྷ <i>khú</i>	[k ^h u]	‘loaf of bread’
ཅྐྱྒྷ <i>khýú</i>	[k ^h ju]	‘bathe’

	labial	dental	alveolar	retroflex	palatal	velar	glottal
voiceless stop	[p] <i>p</i>	[t] <i>t</i>		[ʈ] <i>tr</i>	[c] <i>c</i>	[k] <i>k</i>	[ʔ] <i>ʔ</i>
aspirated voiceless stop	[p ^h] <i>ph</i>	[t ^h] <i>th</i>		[ʈ ^h] <i>thr</i>	[c ^h] <i>ch</i>	[k ^h] <i>kh</i>	
voiced stop	[b] <i>b</i>	[d] <i>d</i>		[ɖ] <i>dr</i>		[g] <i>g</i>	
voiced nasal	[m] <i>m</i>	[n] <i>n</i>			[ɲ] <i>ny</i>	[ŋ] <i>ng</i>	
voiceless affricate			[ʈs] <i>ts</i>				
aspirated voiceless affricate			[ʈ ^h s] <i>tsh</i>				
voiceless fricative	[f] <i>f</i>		[s] <i>s</i>	[ʃ] <i>sh</i>			
voiced fricative	[v] <i>v</i>		[z] <i>z</i>	[ʒ] <i>j</i>			
voiced trill			[r] <i>r</i>				
voiced approximant	[w] <i>w</i>	[l] <i>l</i>			[j] <i>y</i>		
voiceless approximant							[h] <i>h</i>

Diagram 2: Lepcha consonant phonemes

The phoneme /g/ is an unaspirated voiced dorso-velar stop [g]. Before the vowels /i/ and /e/, the /g/ is slightly palatalised [g^j]. The phoneme /g/ occurs only in syllable-initial, not in syllable-final position.

ꠄ gán	[gan]	‘old, aged’
ꠄꠄ gorúŋ	[go·ruŋ]	‘either’
ꠄꠄ gek-lát	[g ^j ek·laʔt̚]	‘birth’
ꠄꠄ gyú	[gju]	‘skill’

ཅཱ་གའ་ tagryú [tʰɑːgrju] ‘cheek’

The phoneme /ŋ/, corresponding to the transliteration digraph *ng*, is a voiced dorso-velar nasal [ŋ]. The phoneme /ŋ/ also occurs in syllable-final position. There is a tendency to neutralise the difference between /ŋ/ and /n/ in syllable-final position. A small number of speakers occasionally realise an initial /ŋ/ closer to a dental nasal [ɲ].

ཉེ་ ngán	[ŋan]	‘remain, sit’
ཉོ་ ngol	[ŋol]	‘early’
ཉུ་ ʔúng	[ʔuŋ]	‘water’
ཉེ་ kryóng	[krjɔŋ]	‘praise’

In syllable-initial position, the phoneme /ŋ/ is sometimes realised as a voiced [h], as we can see in the three examples listed directly below this paragraph. The relationship between the relaxed state of the glottis and the lowered state of the velum conventionally termed nasality, is known as *rhinoglottophilia*. Examples discussed by Matisoff (1975), Michailovsky (1975) and Sprigg (1987), point to this phenomenon as an affinity resulting in the nasalisation of sounds such as [h] or [ʔ], but the examples in Lepcha operate in the opposite direction, from a nasal to an [h]. Although not many examples of this phenomenon were found in Lepcha, the few attested instances are very common and widespread among Lepcha speakers of different ages and of different regions. Nevertheless, most speakers would deny having pronounced the initial /ŋ/ as [h] when confronted with this observation, and the alternation would be rejected in written Lepcha.

ཉེ་ ngâk	[ŋəʔk̚ ~ həʔk̚]	‘look, observe’
ཉུ་ ngú	[ŋu ~ hu]	‘fish’
ཉུ་ ngún	[ŋun ~ hun]	‘become’

The phoneme /c/ is an unaspirated voiceless palatal stop [c]. The phoneme /ch/ is its aspirated counterpart [c^h]. The phonemes /c/ and /ch/ occur only in syllable-initial, not in syllable-final position.

ཅ་ co	[co]	‘tea’
ཅི་ cí	[ci]	‘cí, fermented grain liquor’
ཅོ་ cho	[c ^h o]	‘book’

ḫ̄ <i>chet</i>	[c ^h εʔt̚]	‘relate’
ḫ̄ḫ̄ <i>cechók</i>	[ce·c ^h ɔʔk̚]	‘loveable’

The phoneme /ñ/, corresponding to the transliteration digraph *ny*, is a voiced palatal nasal [ɲ]. The phoneme /ñ/ occurs only in syllable-initial, not in syllable-final position.

ḫ̄ <i>nyet</i>	[ɲεʔt̚]	‘two’
ḫ̄ḫ̄ <i>nyilop</i>	[ɲi·loʔp̚]	‘earlobe’
ḫ̄ <i>nyók</i>	[ɲɔʔk̚]	‘delay’
ḫ̄ <i>nyín</i>	[ɲin]	‘milk’

The phoneme /t/ is realised as a voiceless dental stop [t̚], or as a voiceless alveolar stop [t]. The phoneme /t/ is truly dental in that the tip of the tongue actually touches the back of the teeth. In syllable-final position, /t/ is found to be realised as a voiceless unreleased dental [t̚] or alveolar stop [t̚], usually reinforced with a simultaneous glottal stop, like [ʔt̚] or [ʔt̚].

ḫ̄ḫ̄ <i>tuknóm</i>	[t̚uʔk̚·nɔm]	‘nose’
ḫ̄ <i>tímre</i>	[t̚im·re]	‘respect’
ḫ̄ <i>tór</i>	[t̚ɔr]	‘silk’
ḫ̄ḫ̄ <i>títrepót</i>	[t̚iʔt̚·re·pɔʔt̚]	‘tamarind fruit’
ḫ̄ <i>tyút</i>	[t̚juʔt̚]	‘scar’
ḫ̄ <i>ʔáhret</i>	[a·ʔεʔt̚]	‘bone’

The phoneme /th/ is an aspirated voiceless dental [t̚^h] or alveolar stop [t̚^h]. The phoneme /th/ occurs only in syllable-initial, not in syllable-final position.

ḫ̄ḫ̄ <i>thámpót</i>	[t̚ ^h am·pɔʔt̚]	‘fruit’
ḫ̄ḫ̄ <i>thikúng</i>	[t̚ ^h i·kɔŋ]	‘great grandfather’
ḫ̄ <i>thop</i>	[t̚ ^h oʔp̚]	‘get’
ḫ̄ <i>thyók</i>	[t̚ ^h jɔʔk̚]	‘shelter’

The phoneme /d/ is a voiced dental [d̚] or alveolar stop [d]. The phoneme /d/ occurs only in syllable-initial position, not in syllable-final position.

ཨླ di	[d̪i]	‘come’
ཨླཱ dínɡ	[d̪iŋ]	‘stand’
ཨླཱ dâ	[d̪ʌ]	‘lake’
ཨླཱ sadu	[səːd̪ʌ]	‘slowly’

The phoneme /n/ is realised as a voiced alveolar nasal [n]. The phoneme /n/ occurs both syllable-initially and syllable-finally.

ཨླཱ nâlá	[nʌːla]	‘always’
ཨླཱ nám	[nam]	‘year’
ཨླཱ mân	[mʌn]	‘meat’

The phoneme /tr/ is an unaspirated voiceless retroflex stop [t̪], and the phoneme /thr/ is its aspirated counterpart [t̪ʰ]. The phoneme /dr/ is an unaspirated voiced retroflex stop [d̪]. The retroflex phonemes only occur syllable-initially, not syllable-finally. The retroflex series are written in the native Lepcha orthography as ཨླ kr for /tr/, ཨླ hr for /thr/ and ཨླ gr for /dr/. In Lepcha orthography, the retroflex consonants are often distinguished from the clusters /kr/, /hr/, /gr/, by a small dot written below the consonant cluster. Retroflex sounds occur mainly in loanwords from Tibetan, although some Lepcha words with one of the native initial consonant clusters /kr/, /hr/ or /gr/ are now sometimes pronounced with retroflex sounds, especially in Sikkim. For example, the word ཨླཱ tagrikup [taːgriːkuːp̪] ‘boy’ is sometimes pronounced [taːd̪iːkuːp̪].

ཨླཱ trínchen	[t̪inːcʰen]	‘kindness’
ཨླཱ tróp	[t̪ɔːp̪]	‘winnow’
ཨླ tre	[t̪e]	‘mule’
ཨླ thri	[t̪ʰi]	‘throne’
ཨླ thrim	[t̪ʰim]	‘law’
ཨླ throm	[t̪ʰom]	‘town, market’
ཨླ dri	[d̪i]	‘fort, palace’
ཨླ dróp	[d̪ɔːp̪]	‘moment’
ཨླ dre	[d̪e]	‘demon’

The phoneme /p/ is an unaspirated voiceless bilabial stop [p]. In syllable-final position the phoneme /p/ is often realised as a voiceless unreleased bilabial stop [p̚], often glottally reinforced, viz. [p̚].

ཤྱི་ཤེལ་	[pɛl]	‘be tired’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་ལྷ་ལྷ་	[plɑʔkʰ]	‘break’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པ་ནོ	[paˈno]	‘king’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པི	[pi]	‘write’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པོ	[po]	‘bamboo’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་རྩྭ་	[riʔpʰ]	‘flower’

The phoneme /ph/ is an aspirated voiceless bilabial stop [p^h], which occurs only in syllable-initial position. The phoneme /f/ is a voiceless labiodental fricative [f], occasionally realised as a voiceless bilabial fricative [ɸ]. The phoneme /f/ occurs only syllable-initially, not syllable-finally. When children learn the Lepcha alphabet in the ཤྱི་ཤྱི་ལྷ་ལྷ་ཚོང་ tradition, the letter ཤྱི་ཤྱི་, which is pronounced [fə], is sometimes pronounced as [frə], possibly to increase the contrast between the phonemes /f/ and /ph/. The difference between the two phonemes /ph/ and /f/ appears to be fading these days, no doubt under the influence of Nepali, although in the spoken language of some Lepcha speakers the contrast is still clearly audible.

ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པ་མམ་	[p ^h am]	‘defeat’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པོ	[p ^h o]	‘time, turn’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པིལ་	[p ^h il]	‘be distant’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པཱ་	[fa]	‘swim’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པིལ་	[fiʔkʰ]	‘tear’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པིལ་པིལ་	[fuŋˈfiŋ]	‘blue’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པིལ་ལྷ་	[fleʔtʰ]	‘wash one’s face’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པིལ་ལྷ་	[flɔʔkʰ]	‘peel’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པིལ་ལྷ་	[fjeʔkʰ]	‘sharpen’

The phoneme /b/ is a voiced bilabial stop [b]. The phoneme /b/ occurs only in syllable-initial position, not in syllable-final position.

ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པ་ན་	[ban]	‘knife’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པི	[bi]	‘give’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པིལ་	[biʔkʰ]	‘cow’
ཤྱི་ཤྱི་པིལ་ལྷ་	[ʔaˈbeʔkʰ]	‘middle’

The phoneme /m/ is a voiced bilabial nasal [m]. The phoneme /m/ occurs both in syllable-initial and in syllable-final position.

ᄃᄂ <i>mák</i>	[maʔk̚]	‘die’
ᄃᄂ <i>mi</i>	[mi]	‘fire’
ᄃᄂ <i>món</i>	[mɔn]	‘pig’, ‘medicine’
ᄃᄂ <i>mlyá</i>	[mlja]	‘level, even’
ᄃᄂ ᄃᄂ <i>ʔárom</i>	[ʔaʔrom]	‘fear’

The phoneme /ts/ is a voiceless alveolar affricate [tʃ]. The phoneme /tsh/ is an aspirated voiceless alveolar affricate [tʃʰ]. The phonemes /ts/ and /tsh/ occur only syllable-initially, not syllable-finally.

ᄃᄂ <i>tsám</i>	[tʃam]	‘hold’
ᄃᄂ <i>tsót</i>	[tʃɔʔt̚]	‘squeeze’
ᄃᄂ <i>tsúk</i>	[tʃuʔk̚]	‘bite’
ᄃᄂ <i>tsurtsur</i>	[tʃurʔtʃur]	‘twinkle’
ᄃᄂ <i>tshó</i>	[tʃʰɔ]	‘aim’
ᄃᄂ <i>tshukpót</i>	[tʃʰukʔpɔʔt̚]	‘word’
ᄃᄂ <i>tshâlum</i>	[tʃʰʌ-lum]	‘orange’

The phoneme /s/ is a voiceless alveolar fricative [s]. The phoneme /sh/ is a voiceless alveopalatal fricative [ʃ]. Both /s/ and /sh/ occur only in syllable-initial position. The distinction between /s/ and /sh/ is neutralised before the vowel [i], as for example in ᄃᄂ *shi* [ʃi~si] ‘see’.

ᄃᄂ <i>so</i>	[so]	‘rain’
ᄃᄂ <i>sagrek</i>	[sʌgreʔk̚]	‘throat’
ᄃᄂ <i>sung</i>	[suŋ]	‘story’
ᄃᄂ <i>shâk</i>	[ʃʌʔk̚]	‘louse’
ᄃᄂ <i>sher</i>	[ʃer]	‘glass’
ᄃᄂ <i>shól</i>	[ʃɔl]	‘fox’

The phoneme /j/ is a voiced alveopalatal fricative [ʒ]. The phoneme /j/ occurs only in syllable-initial position, not in syllable-final position. The phoneme /z/ is a voiced alveolar or dental fricative [z], sometimes realised as a voiced alveolar affricate [dʒ]. The distinction between /j/ and /z/ appears to be fading in modern-day spoken Lep-

cha, as some speakers no longer distinguish between the two phonemes.

ཅོ་ཇཱལ	[ʒʌl]	‘dry’
ཅོ་ཇཱེར	[ʒɛr]	‘gold’
ཅོ་ཇཱེམ	[ʒʌm]	‘assemble’
ཅོ་ཇཱེ	[ʒʌ]	‘err’
ཅོ་ཇཱེཀ	[ʒoʔkʰ]	‘trickle’
ཅོ་ཇཱེཇཱེདུང	[dʒaːdiŋ~ʒaːdiŋ]	‘jug’
ཅོ་ཇཱེཇཱེའོམ	[ʔaːdʒɔm~ʔaːzɔm]	‘rice, food’

The phoneme /r/ is a voiced alveolar trill [r], which occasionally has a flapped articulation [ɾ]. The phoneme /r/ occurs both in syllable-initial and in syllable-final position, and can also occur as a post-consonantal glide with a certain set of consonants in syllable-initial position. The initial consonants with which the post-consonantal glide /r/ may combine are /k/, /g/, /ŋ/, /p/, /f/, /b/, /m/, /h/ (cf. Diagram 3). The post-consonantal glide /r/ also combines with the post-consonantal glide /y/, in which case it always precedes the /y/, so we may find an initial consonant followed by the sequence /ry/, as in ཇཱེམལའོམ *mryóm* ‘spread over the ground, creep’.

The Lepcha script distinguishes special symbols for the phoneme /r/ in its syllable-initial use, its syllable-final use, and its post-consonantal use, cf. རཱལ *ra*, ཅོ་ཇཱེ *kor*, ཇཱེའོམ *pro*. In this respect, Lepcha orthography structurally uniquely resembles the Limbu script, a writing system which was designed in the same region and time as the Lepcha script. The cluster ཇཱེའོམ *hr* is realised as a voiceless apico-alveolar trill [ɽ] and is only found in syllable-initial position.

རཱལ	[ru]	‘cane’
རཱལམ	[ram]	‘thunder’
རཱལཀ	[roʔk]	‘read, study’
རཱལཀོར	[kor]	‘wander, stroll’
རཱལཀོརོམ	[krɔn]	‘scratch’
རཱལཀོརུ	[tsur]	‘radiate’
རཱལཀོརོ	[ro]	‘come up’
རཱལཀོརཱལམ	[ɽjam]	‘jerk’
རཱལཀོརུམ	[ɽun]	‘hot’

The phoneme /v/ is realised as a voiced labiodental fricative [v] and the phoneme /w/ is a voiced bilabial approximant [w]. The native Lepcha orthography offers a distinction between the two graphemes for [v] and [w], i.e. ཅ v for [v] and ཇ w for [w]. This distinction is still adhered to in written Lepcha, but in spoken Lepcha the distinction is marginal, and is only made when Lepcha speakers feel the need to contrast two lexemes containing either /v/ or /w/ that are spelt differently (but normally pronounced the same), or when the alphabet is read out loud. The phonemes /v/ and /w/ occur only in syllable-initial position, not in syllable-final position. Although the distinction between /v/ and /w/ is fading in spoken Lepcha, no doubt under influence of Nepali, which lacks a phoneme /v/, I have chosen to retain the distinction in writing.

ཅ བོམ	[vɔm]	‘salt’
ཇའལ རའལའལ	[ʔaːvjo]	‘tibia’
ཇའལ འལ	[viʔkʰ]	‘soldier’
ཅ འལའལ	[vjɛʔʰ]	‘ask, inquire’
ཇའལ འལའལ	[woːmu]	‘spindle’
ཇའལ འལའལ	[wɔːmu]	‘jackal’
ཇའལ འལའལ	[wurːdo]	‘sling’

The phoneme /l/ is a voiced alveolar lateral approximant [l]. The phoneme /l/ occurs both in syllable-initial and in syllable-final position. The phoneme /l/ also occurs as a post-consonantal glide with a certain set of consonants in syllable-initial position. For these initial consonant clusters with /l/, there is a special series of consonant letters in the native orthography, i.e. ཅ ལལ, ཇ ལལ ར ལལ, ཇ ལལ, ཅ ལལ, ཅ ལལ, ཅ ལལ. All consonant letters in this series actually do represent consonant clusters, although the phonological cluster ཅ ལལ is realised as a voiceless alveolar lateral fricative [ɬ].

ཅ ལལ	[lɔʔʰ]	‘repeat’
ཅ ལལ	[laʔpʰ]	‘bury’
ཅ ལལ	[liʔʰ]	‘sift’
ཅ ལལ	[ul]	‘sell’
ཅ ལལ	[nɔl]	‘skin’
ཅ ལལ	[lo]	‘hill’
ཅ ལལ	[laŋ]	‘harden, as yams’

ᳵ <i>hlok</i>	[loʔkʰ]	‘break, as eggs’
ᳶ <i>hlyám</i>	[ljám]	‘shake, quiver’

The phoneme /h/ is a voiceless glottal approximant [h], which occurs only in syllable-initial position.

᳷ <i>hák</i>	[hɑʔk]	‘carve’
᳸ <i>heng</i>	[heŋ]	‘ginger’
᳹ <i>háp</i>	[hɑʔp]	‘shut’
ᳺ <i>híp</i>	[hiʔp]	‘shave’

The phoneme /y/ is a voiced palatal approximant [j], which can occur in syllable-initial position, but not in syllable-final position. The phoneme /y/ also occurs as a post-consonantal glide with a certain set of consonants in syllable-initial position. The initial consonants with which /y/ combines as a post-consonantal glide, are /k/, /kh/, /g/, /t/, /th/, /d/, /p/, /ph/, /f/, /b/, /m/, /r/, /l/, /h/, /hl/ and /v/, cf. Diagram 3.

Glottal hiatus is a pre-vocalic glottal closure followed by abrupt voice onset which occurs word-initially in words beginning with a vowel and word-internally between vowels. In native Lepcha orthography, a glottal stop is indicated by the symbol ʔ, e.g. ʔáre [ʔaːre] ‘this’, ʔí [ʔiʔiʔi] ‘create’.

᳻ <i>soʔám</i>	[soːʔəm]	‘summer’
ʔáre	[ʔaːre]	‘this’

The sequence that is written ʔy- at the beginning of a word, indicates an initial glottal stop [ʔ] followed by a voiced palatal approximant [j]. Some of the examples starting with ʔy [ʔj] listed immediately below form minimal pairs with words with an initial voiced palatal approximant [j].

ᳵ <i>yok</i>	[joʔkʰ]	‘top, summit’
ʔyók	[ʔjoʔkʰ]	‘work, job, chore’
ᳶ <i>yel</i>	[jel]	‘know a language’
ʔyel	[ʔjel]	‘divert’
᳷ <i>yá</i>	[jʌ]	‘know’
ʔyá	[ʔjʌ]	‘formerly’
᳸ <i>yor</i>	[jor]	‘row’

ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	[ʔjor]	‘pitfall’
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	[jaʔp̚]	‘grope’
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	[ʔjaʔp̚]	‘chop’
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	[ʔjɛn]	‘last year’

2.3 Syllables

Each syllable in Lepcha contains a vowel phoneme at its core. The syllable contains an initial consonant or consonant cluster, and may or may not contain a final consonant. While all consonants may occur as syllable-initial consonants, not all consonants may be combined with the post-consonantal glides -y- and -r-, nor with post-consonantal -l-. All possible combinations for initial consonant clusters are listed in Diagram 3.

-y-	-r-	-ry-	-l-	-ly-
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ				
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ/ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ/ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ				
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ/ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ/ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ
	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ			
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ		ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ				
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ		ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ				
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ/ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ	ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ/ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ		
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ				
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ				
ꨧꨣ ꨑꨣꨣ				

Diagram 3: Syllable-initial consonant clusters

The following consonants may appear in syllable-final position: /k/, /ŋ/, /t/, /n/, /p/, /m/, /r/, /l/.

Lepcha morphemes are monosyllabic. Many Lepcha words are composed of different syllables, with the stress usually on the second syllable. Richard Keith Sprigg analyses Lepcha as having contrastive stress (1966b: 199-200). The intonation of Lepcha is characterised by the clustering of syllables into groups, often these are phrases or groups of words marked by suffixes, postpositions or particles. The intonation of Lepcha from northern Sikkim is markedly different to the intonation of Lepcha from other regions, in that it is much slower and much less monotonous. This type of intonation is believed to represent an older and more elegant style of speaking, less influenced by neighbouring languages such as Nepali or Dränjoke.

2.4 *Native Lepcha orthography*

The Lepcha script is written from left to right, with spaces between words. In Lepcha, no distinction is made between capital and lower-case letters. Punctuation marks are similar to the ones used in the Tibetan orthography, although nowadays full stops, commas and question marks from the Roman alphabet are also used. The ‘alphabet’ or ‘syllabary’ is referred to in the Lepcha language as ཡུ ཁཀམ་ *kakha* ‘ABC’, རྩོམ་ཚིག་ *chomúng* ‘written letters’ and རྩོམ་ཚིག་གི་མཚན་ལོ་ *múngzât* ‘treasure of letters’. The native Lepcha orthography is systematically treated in the text ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *lazóng*, the book on the Lepcha alphabet, which is traditionally used to teach Lepcha orthography (Plaisier 2003: 31-32).

The order of the Lepcha alphabet as given in the ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *lazóng*, is different to the order in which the Lepcha alphabet is taught and read out today. The original Lepcha syllabary was built out of five units, as given below in Diagram 4, the first units running from ག ལཱ་ to རྩ མམ་, and the second unit running from ལ ཀཱ་ to ལ མཱ་, etc. Although most ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *lazóng* books use the same order, occasionally there is some variation in the order of the units. A similar conclusion was pointed to by R. K. Sprigg in his article ‘Original and sophisticated features of the Lepcha and Limbu scripts’ (Sprigg 2003). The order of the consonant symbols within the five units may vary slightly between different versions of the ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *lazóng*, between the introductory summary of the alphabet in the opening part of ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *lazóng* and the actual listing of all

possible syllables in ལཱཱེལྷོང་ *lazóng* books. However, the differences are minor and most of them are apparently oversights of the copyists.

ཧྲ ཇa	ཨྲ ka	ཨྲ ga	ཨྲ pa	ཨྲ fa	ཨྲ ba	ཨྲ ma		
ཨྲ ha	ཨྲ ra	ཨྲ kha	ཨྲ ta	ཨྲ tha				
ཨྲ da	ཨྲ la	ཨྲ kla	ཨྲ gla	ཨྲ pla	ཨྲ fla	ཨྲ bla		
ཨྲ mla	ཨྲ hla	ཨྲ va	ཨྲ nga	ཨྲ ca	ཨྲ pha	ཨྲ nya	ཨྲ na	ཨྲ tsa
ཨྲ wa	ཨྲ ja	ཨྲ za	ཨྲ ya	ཨྲ sha	ཨྲ cha	ཨྲ tsha	ཨྲ sa	

Diagram 4: Original order of the syllabary

In the ལཱཱེལྷོང་ *lazóng*, all the orthographic symbols and combinations of symbols are treated in a specific order, building from simple consonant or vowel signs to more complex syllables. Apart from a few paragraphs which introduce the different sections making up the book, the ལཱཱེལྷོང་ does not contain running text as such. The traditional method of instruction is for the teacher to recite sections of the ལཱཱེལྷོང་ in a set melody and for the students to read and chant along with the teacher, until the students have memorised the values of the letters and the syllables and are able to read and to recite by themselves. Although most people nowadays learn to read and write Lepcha through primers and textbooks based on different methods, the traditional method based on recitation of the ལཱཱེལྷོང་ is still practised. The list of possible syllables in Lepcha given by Mainwaring in his grammar (1876: 12-18), is clearly based on the ལཱཱེལྷོང་. The order of the syllabary that is mostly used in primers and textbooks today, clearly influenced by the order of the *devanāgarī* alphabet, is given in Diagram 5 below, starting with ཨྲ ka, ཨྲ kha, ཨྲ ga, ཨྲ nga, and ending with ཨྲ bla, ཨྲ mla, ཨྲ hla.

Although many Lepcha believe that a literary tradition existed among the Lepcha before the arrival of Buddhism in the area, thus far no evidence has been found to corroborate this claim. It seems more likely that the invention of the Lepcha alphabet was motivated by the

religious activities of Buddhist missionaries. The Buddhist monks were keen to communicate with the Lepcha people in their own language, and as so often happens when the influence of a new religion spreads, religious texts were translated into the local language of the area, in this case Lepcha, for which an alphabet had yet to be created (Plaisier 2003: 20-23, Risley 1894: 13, Sprigg 1983, 1996).

The Lepcha script is understood to be devised during the reign of the third chögel of Sikkim, ཚོས་རྒྱལ་ཕྱག་རྒྱུ་ཚོ་ལྷ་མོ་ *Chögü Châdo 'Namgü* (*imperabat* 1700-1716). According to Lepcha tradition, the native Lepcha orthography was created by the Lepcha scholar མེ་ལོ་ལོ་ རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *Thikúng Mensalóng*, who is believed to have been a contemporary of ལྷ་མོ་ལྷ་མོ་ཚེ་ལོ་ *'Lama Lhatsün Chenpo*, i.e. ལྷ་མོ་ལྷ་མོ་ཚེ་ལོ་ལོ་ *'Lama Lhatsün Namkha Jimi* (1597-1654), the patron saint of Sikkim, who is considered to have played a definitive part in the Sikkimese conversion to Buddhism. Since sources mention that རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *Mensalóng* and *Lhatsün Chenpo* met each other (Foning 1987: 152), it might well have been the case that they worked together on the Lepcha orthography, which would account for a Tibetan tradition which ascribes the introduction of the Lepcha script to *Lhatsün Chenpo*. The Lepcha tradition that credits རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *Mensalóng* with the invention of the Lepcha script, seems even more plausible when we realise that during the reign of *Châdo 'Namgü* not just the Lepcha script, but also the Limbu or Kiranti script was developed, not by *Châdo 'Namgü* himself, but by the Limbu monk *Śirijaṅgā* (van Driem 2001: 674-675).

The 36 consonant symbols རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *chomíng yámo* or རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *yámú yámíng* ‘consonants, mother letters’ are given below in Diagram 5 with a Roman transliteration of each symbol. When the consonant is not marked by any vowel sign, the inherent vowel of the consonant is the vowel transliterated as *a*.

Vowel diacritics may be added to the consonant symbols. The nine vowel diacritics are traditionally known as རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *chomíng yákup* or རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *yákup yámíng* ‘vowel signs, child letters, small letters’ and རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *yákup thámbyín* or རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *míngkup thámbyín* ‘diacritical vowel signs’, cf. Diagram 6. Mainwaring claims that the term རྩོ་ལོ་ལོ་ *yákup* was ‘formerly applied by the Lepcha exclusively to the Finals’ (1876: 3).



Diagram 5: Consonant letters

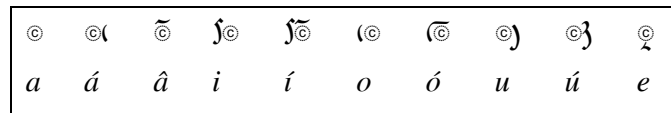


Diagram 6: Vowel signs

At the beginning of a syllable, any Lepcha consonant may occur. Although all Lepcha vowels may be found at the end of a syllable, only a limited number of consonants can occur syllable-finally. The consonants found at the end of syllables are: *-k*, *-t*, *-n*, *-p*, *-m*, *-r*, *-l* and *-ng*. The ꠄ꠨ ꠆꠨ *tyelbú thámbyín* or ꠄ꠨ ꠆꠨ *múngtyel thámbyín* ‘final consonant signs’ are given in Diagram 7.

The ꠆꠨ (꠆ *nyíndo* sign, i.e. ‘꠆꠨’), transliterated here as *-ang*, is used to indicate a final velar nasal when no specific vowel sign is indicated, as in ꠆꠨ *sang*. The ꠆꠨ ꠆ *lakang* sign is used to indicate a final velar nasal in combination with diacritical vowel signs, as in the syllables ꠆꠨ (*sáng*), ꠆꠨ (*síng*), and ꠆꠨ (*song*). The distinction between the ꠆꠨ (꠆ *nyíndo* and the ꠆꠨ ꠆ *lakang* is not always made when people discuss orthography, often the ꠆꠨ (꠆ *nyíndo* is used as a general term for a written final velar nasal.

symbol	ᵐ	ᵐ	ᵐ
transliteration	-k	-m	-l
name of symbol	ᵐᵐ	ᵐᵐ	ᵐᵐ
examples	ᵐᵐ <i>lakát</i> ᵐᵐ <i>rok</i>	ᵐᵐ <i>lanyet</i> ᵐᵐ <i>kím</i>	ᵐᵐ <i>lasám</i> ᵐᵐ <i>pál</i>
symbol	ᵐ	ᵐ	ᵐ
transliteration	-n	-p	-r
name of symbol	ᵐᵐ	ᵐᵐ	ᵐᵐ
examples	ᵐᵐ <i>lanun</i> ᵐᵐ <i>bán</i>	ᵐᵐ <i>lakup</i> ᵐᵐ <i>óp</i>	ᵐᵐ <i>ladar</i> ᵐᵐ <i>kor</i>
symbol	ᵐ	ᵐ	ᵐ
transliteration	-t	-ng	-ang
name of symbol	ᵐᵐ	ᵐᵐ	ᵐᵐ
examples	ᵐᵐ <i>lakat</i> ᵐᵐ <i>fát</i>	ᵐᵐ <i>lakang</i> ᵐᵐ <i>róng</i>	ᵐᵐ <i>nyíndo</i> ᵐᵐ <i>pang</i>

Diagram 7: Final consonant signs

For those consonant clusters in which the initial consonant is followed by one of the post-consonantal glides *-y*, *-r* or *-l*, the term ᵐᵐᵐ *míngthyú* ‘conjunct consonants, affixed consonants’ is used. The ᵐᵐᵐ *míngthyú* series includes the consonant symbols ᵐ *kla*, ᵐ *gla*, ᵐ *pla*, ᵐ *fla*, ᵐ *bla*, ᵐ *mla* and ᵐ *hla*, which are also sometimes referred to as the ᵐᵐᵐ *lathyú* ‘l-cluster’, literally ‘l-affix’. The orthography also has special symbols for post-consonantal *-y* and *-r*, i.e. the ᵐᵐᵐ *yathyú* ‘y-affix’ and the ᵐᵐᵐ *rathyú* ‘r-affix’. The ᵐᵐᵐ *yathyú* and ᵐᵐᵐ *rathyú* symbols can be used in combination with each other, as for example in ᵐᵐᵐ *fryóm* ‘suspect’. The ᵐᵐᵐ *yathyú* and ᵐᵐᵐ *rathyú* symbols may also be used in combination with the ᵐᵐᵐ *lathyú* series, as in ᵐᵐᵐ *mlyúk* ‘lukewarm, tepid’, in which case the ᵐᵐᵐ *yathyú* always follows either the ᵐᵐᵐ *lathyú* or the ᵐᵐᵐ *rathyú*. The ᵐᵐᵐ *lathyú* and ᵐᵐᵐ *rathyú* may not be combined with each other.

symbol	ᄁ	ᄂ
transliteration	-y	-r
name of sign	ᄃᄅ ᄆᄇ <i>yathyú</i>	ᄃᄅᄇ <i>rathyú</i>
examples	ᄃᄅ <i>kya</i> , ᄃᄅ <i>kra</i> , ᄃᄅᄇ <i>krya</i>	

Diagram 8: Affixed consonant signs

For retroflex sounds, which occur mainly in loanwords from Drän-joke, the clusters ᄃᄅ *kra*, ᄃᄅᄇ *hra* and ᄃᄅᄇ *gra* are used, e.g. ᄃᄅᄇ *throm* ‘town, market’, and ᄃᄅᄇ ᄆᄇ *trók chí* ‘thank you’. The retroflex sounds are usually marked by a dot written below the graph, so as to distinguish these sounds from the unmarked non-retroflex sounds *kra*, *hra* and *gra*, which occur widely in Lepcha, e.g. ᄆᄇ *krít* ‘hunger’, and ᄃᄅᄇ *hróng* ‘come up, arrive’. This useful diacritic was introduced by Mainwaring (1876: 10-11), and is known as *Mainwaring’s dot*. Mainwaring suggests that the dot was also used with the letters ᄃᄅ *za* and ᄃᄅ *ra*, but this particular usage is no longer found (Mainwaring 1876: 11). Although not all Lepcha writers favour the orthographic innovation, Mainwaring’s dot still is widely used to indicate retroflex sounds.

ᄃᄅ	ᄃᄅᄇ	ᄃᄅᄇ	ᄃᄅ	ᄃᄅᄇ	ᄃᄅᄇ
<i>kra</i>	<i>gra</i>	<i>hra</i>	<i>tra</i>	<i>dra</i>	<i>thra</i>

Diagram 9: Retroflex consonants

The ᄃᄅ *rân* ‘circumflex’ sign is a diacritic flourish written over a consonant sign or over a vowel sign ‘ᄃᄅ’, as in ᄃᄅ *rân*, ᄃᄅ ᄆᄇ or ᄃᄅ ᄆᄇ. Although the original function of the ᄃᄅ *rân* sign is still unclear, it is often present in closed syllables, in which case the circumflex sign should be written above the final consonant sign. It has been suggested that the function of the ᄃᄅ *rân* is to indicate stress or pitch, in order to distinguish stressable syllables from syllables that never appear in a stressed position, and this hypothesis may well be correct (Plaisier 2003: 28-29, Sprigg 1983: 316). However, because the function of the ᄃᄅ *rân* sign is unclear to most writers, nowadays the sign is

used by the Lepcha in a variety of ways and opinions vary strongly as to which is the correct usage.

2.5 Romanisation and spelling

In order to represent Lepcha in the Roman alphabet, either a transliteration or a transcription system may be used. Transliteration systems carefully substitute orthographical symbols by Roman letters and should follow the same spelling conventions and particularities that are used in the native orthography. Transcriptions are devised with the pronunciation of a language in mind and are used to characterise the phonology of a language. Not all systems that are used for the representation of Lepcha in the Roman alphabet are fully systematic in the sense that they can be called either a proper transliteration or a transcription, but the most popular ones represented in Diagram 10 below are systematic and fairly easy to grasp.

The prevailing transliteration system is that of Mainwaring, and most other romanisations are based on his system (1876: 2-3), albeit with some modifications. The transcription system used by Gorer (1938) is based on the pronunciation of well-known western European languages such as English, French and German. The basis of the transcriptions of Stocks (1925) and Hermanns (1954) is unclear.

Grünwedel (1898: viii-xi) uses Mainwaring's system, but introduces several changes in order to conform to the spelling of Tibetan words according to the Jäschke transcription. Also, Grünwedel arrived at a different treatment of Lepcha vowels, as can be concluded from Diagram 10. Mainwaring did not romanise the \tilde{r} *rân* sign, which flaws his system, and Grünwedel chose to be more systematic in the transliteration of Lepcha vowels. Grünwedel also decided to romanise syllables with an initial ṛ as 'a-, whereas Mainwaring would have transliterated this initial as ay-. In Grünwedel's system, the retroflex sounds are not distinguished from the consonant clusters *kra*, *gra*, *hra*, but he does mark each form that he believes to be a Tibetan loan with an asterisk *. Grünwedel's work is often criticised because it did not include the original Lepcha orthography. It should be noted that it was not his own choice to publish the manuscript dictionary left by Mainwaring and carefully edited by Grünwedel with just a transcription of the Lepcha words and examples, but that it was demanded by

the British Government, which commissioned the publication of the Lepcha dictionary manuscript (Grünwedel 1898a: ix).

In his publications on the Lepcha language, R.K. Sprigg also uses a transcription that is based on Mainwaring, although he replaces *ch* by *c* and *chh* by *ch*. Sprigg adds an apostrophe to indicate an initial glottal stop, and to avoid the suggestion of disyllabicity in words with an initial ʔ he chooses to romanise this initial as 'y- instead of with Mainwaring's *ay-*. (Sprigg 1983: 305).

The system of transliteration used in Siiger and Rischel's monograph (1967) is in principle the same as Grünwedel's system, but for typographical reasons some diacritics are replaced by consonants. Bodman (1988:1) also used a system based on Grünwedel's transcription with a few modifications. Bodman replaced *ñ* with *ng*, *š* with *sy*, *c* with *cy*, *c'* with *chy*, and *j* with *zy*. Bodman systematically represents aspiration with the letter *h*, and he replaced *ts* with *c*, and *ts'* with *ch*. The initial glottal stop is not represented in his transcription system.

K. P. Támsáng chose a transliteration system that is close to Mainwaring's in the realm of the consonants, apart from *chya* for ɕ , *jya* for ʃ , *shya* for ɕ , and *ta* for ɕ as well as retroflex ɕ , *da* for ɕ as well as retroflex ɕ , and *hta* for retroflex ɕ . As can be seen from Diagram 10 below, Támsáng's system differs a great deal from other systems in the representation of the vowels. Khárpú Támsáng chooses to avoid the ɕ (ɕ *nyíndo* sign; where others spell ɕ *sang*, he spells ɕ). In his *Lepcha-English Encyclopedic Dictionary*, Khárpú Támsáng (1980) does not romanise the ɕ *rân*, although from examples in the Lepcha orthography it is evident that he uses the diacritic systematically in closed syllables where no vowel diacritic is used. Khárpú Támsáng sometimes uses the ɕ *rân* in open syllables ending in *-a*, i.e. in syllables where no vowel diacritic is used, which implies a distinction between syllables ending in *-a* and *-â*. In other words, Támsáng implies that the difference between open syllables ending in *-a* and *-â* is lexical.

Sometimes, Lepcha is transcribed in the *devanāgarī* script, which does not accurately reflect the original orthography but merely represents a phonetic approximation of Lepcha, which may lead to confusion as to the pronunciation and spelling of words. Nevertheless, many Lepcha find a representation in *devanāgarī* script helpful, especially those who are not familiar with native Lepcha orthography but

have learned to read and write Nepali in *devanāgarī* script. A standardised representation of Lepcha orthography into *devanāgarī* script could be helpful for this group of people.

The romanisation used throughout this book is based on Mainwaring's system, but the following modifications have been made: *ca* is used instead of *cha* for the consonant symbol ɕ , and for the symbol ɕ , *cha* is used instead of *chha*. The clusters *tra*, *dra* and *thra* are used for the retroflex sounds, the symbol ɕ is systematically transcribed as *ʔ*, ɕ is transcribed as *ʔy-*, â is used for â , and *í* is used for í .

From Diagram 11, in which the native orthography, the transliteration used throughout this book, and a phonetic transcription of Lepcha vowels are put side by side, it can be seen that the native Lepcha orthography is not wholly phonological. On the one hand, the native orthography distinguishes between symbols that do not, or no longer, represent a phonological distinction, i.e. í vs. i , and â vs. *a* (for example in ka). On the other hand, the orthography does not adequately distinguish between the sounds [e] and [ɛ], as will be shown below.

In older manuscripts, the symbols í and i are used in a systematic manner: í is used only in closed syllables and i only in open syllables. Since Mainwaring's time and possibly through his influence, the distribution of the orthographic symbols í and i has become much more random.

The function of the rân sign in the Lepcha orthography remains unclear to me, although, as mentioned above, old texts suggest that the circumflex sign originally occurred mainly in closed syllables and could serve to point to the presence of a final consonant diacritic. It is also possible that the circumflex sign was used to indicate stress, or stressable syllables. Nowadays the usage of the circumflex sign appears to be unsystematic or even unpredictable, and a closer study of the usage of the rân sign in old texts is likely to shed more light on this matter.

The yathyú , the infix -y- , is often used before the vowels /e/ and /i/ to indicate the palatalisation of certain consonants before these front vowels. Not all Lepcha writers favour this approach, which is found to be more common in Sikkim than in the Kalimpong and Darjeeling hills. The word for 'give', for example, can be found spelt as bi or byi , and the word for 'play' may be written either lem or lyem . The orthographic sequences -ya , and -yá of-

ten point to a realisation of the phoneme /e/ as [ɛ], as in ூଁ (gyal [gɛl]), which is sometimes found written ூଁ gyál [gɛl].

There is rather a lot of variation and some inconsistency in the spelling of many Lepcha words. Some spellings are spontaneous, others idiosyncratic. The spelling used in certain books or by certain scholars is often seen as indicative. Opinions about what is and what is not correctly spelt are generally strong. There are quite a lot of regional differences when it comes to the spelling of words, and some spellings are clearly influenced by either Dränjoke, Tibetan or Nepali.

Especially in the realm of vowels, the spelling of Lepcha words is often seen to be confusing if not inconsistent, although a number of recurring variations can be recognised. In several papers, Sprigg points to the phonetic reasons underlying a number of spelling variations. In short, we can conclude from his work that an important role is played by the difference in realisation between vowels that occur in closed syllables as opposed to vowels that occur in open syllables. The presence of certain distinctions between vowels in one kind of syllable and the lack of the same distinctions in the other kind of syllable appear to make it impossible for the vowels to alternate in a consistent manner, as is discussed in more detail below (cf. Sprigg 1983, 1989).

In some Lepcha words, variant spellings correspond to differences in pronunciation, such as in ூଁ ூଁ vs. ூଁ ூଁ ‘work’ and ூଁ thop vs. ூଁ thúp ‘get’, but at other times another phenomenon can be seen at work. This is the influence of nasalisation on the spelling of words. While it does not make a difference to the meaning of a Lepcha word if vowels are nasalised or not, it does appear to make the spelling of such words less straightforward. In the case of the variation between written ூଁ o and ூଁ ú, Sprigg points to the fact that while the three rounded back vowels ூଁ ú [u], ூଁ o [o], and ூଁ ó [ɔ] may occur in syllables with non-nasal initial consonants, in syllables with an initial nasal consonant the vowel is nasalised, and in such syllables only two back vowels occur, i.e. ூଁ ú and ூଁ ó. In other words, Sprigg claims that there are only two lip-rounded vowel units in nasal-initial syllables, i.e. ூଁ ú [ũ] ~ ூଁ o [õ] and ூଁ ó [õ] versus three, i.e. ூଁ ú [u], ூଁ o [o], and ூଁ ó [ɔ] in other syllables. Sprigg also points out that a spelling with ூଁ o would often yield a spelling closer to a Tibetan cognate, but that perhaps for this very reason many Lepcha prefer a spelling with ூଁ ú (Sprigg 1989: 229).

	Plaisier	Mainwaring	Grünwedel	Támsáng	
ㄏ	<i>ka</i>	<i>ka</i>	<i>kă</i>	<i>ka</i>	ㄏ
ㄎ	<i>kha</i>	<i>kha</i>	<i>k'ă</i>	<i>kha</i>	ㄎ
ㄍ	<i>ga</i>	<i>ga</i>	<i>gă</i>	<i>ga</i>	ㄍ
ㄍ	<i>nga</i>	<i>nga</i>	<i>nă</i>	<i>nga</i>	ㄍ
ㄘ	<i>ca</i>	<i>cha</i>	<i>čă</i>	<i>cha</i>	ㄘ
ㄘ	<i>cha</i>	<i>chha</i>	<i>č'ă</i>	<i>chya</i>	ㄘ
ㄐ	<i>ja</i>	<i>ja</i>	<i>jă</i>	<i>jya</i>	ㄐ
ㄐ	<i>nya</i>	<i>nya</i>	<i>nyă</i>	<i>nya</i>	ㄐ
ㄒ	<i>ta</i>	<i>ta</i>	<i>tă</i>	<i>ta</i>	ㄒ
ㄒ	<i>tha</i>	<i>tha</i>	<i>t'ă</i>	<i>tha</i>	ㄒ
ㄉ	<i>da</i>	<i>da</i>	<i>dă</i>	<i>da</i>	ㄉ
ㄉ	<i>na</i>	<i>na</i>	<i>nă</i>	<i>na</i>	ㄉ
ㄉ	<i>pa</i>	<i>pa</i>	<i>pă</i>	<i>pa</i>	ㄉ
ㄉ	<i>pha</i>	<i>pha</i>	<i>p'ă</i>	<i>pha</i>	ㄉ
ㄈ	<i>fa</i>	<i>fa</i>	<i>fă</i>	<i>fa</i>	ㄈ
ㄈ	<i>ba</i>	<i>ba</i>	<i>bă</i>	<i>ba</i>	ㄈ
ㄇ	<i>ma</i>	<i>ma</i>	<i>mă</i>	<i>ma</i>	ㄇ
ㄇ	<i>tsa</i>	<i>tsa</i>	<i>tsă</i>	<i>tsa</i>	ㄇ
ㄇ	<i>tsha</i>	<i>tsha</i>	<i>ts'ă</i>	<i>tsha</i>	ㄇ
ㄗ	<i>za</i>	<i>za</i>	<i>ză</i>	<i>za</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>ya</i>	<i>ya</i>	<i>yă</i>	<i>ya</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>ra</i>	<i>ra</i>	<i>ră</i>	<i>ra</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>la</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>lă</i>	<i>la</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>ha</i>	<i>ha</i>	<i>hă</i>	<i>ha</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>va</i>	<i>va</i>	<i>vă</i>	<i>va</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>sha</i>	<i>sha</i>	<i>šă</i>	<i>sya</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>sa</i>	<i>sa</i>	<i>să</i>	<i>sa</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>wa</i>	<i>wa</i>	<i>wă</i>	<i>wa</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>kla</i>	<i>kla</i>	<i>klă</i>	<i>kla</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>gla</i>	<i>gla</i>	<i>glă</i>	<i>gla</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>fla</i>	<i>fla</i>	<i>flă</i>	<i>fla</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>pla</i>	<i>pla</i>	<i>plă</i>	<i>pla</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>bla</i>	<i>bla</i>	<i>blă</i>	<i>bla</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>mla</i>	<i>mla</i>	<i>mlă</i>	<i>mla</i>	ㄗ
ㄗ	<i>hla</i>	<i>hla</i>	<i>hlă</i>	<i>hla</i>	ㄗ

	Plaisier	Mainwaring	Grünwedel	Támsáng	
ᵗ	<i>tra</i>	<i>ᵗra</i>	–	<i>ta</i>	ᵗ
ᵘ	<i>dra</i>	<i>gra</i>	–	<i>da</i>	ᵘ
ᵙ	<i>thra</i>	<i>ᵗra</i>	–	<i>hta</i>	ᵙ
ᵗ	<i>ʔ</i>	–	–	<i>a</i>	ᵗ
ᵗ(	<i>ʔá</i>	<i>á</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>aa</i>	ᵗ(
ᵗ̃	<i>ʔâ</i>	<i>aa</i>	<i>á</i>	–	ᵗ̃
ᵗᵗ	<i>ʔi</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ae</i>	ᵗᵗ
ᵗ̃ᵗ	<i>ʔí</i>	<i>î</i>	<i>í</i>	<i>ai</i>	ᵗ̃ᵗ
ᵗ(	<i>ʔo</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>ao</i>	ᵗ(
ᵗ̃(	<i>ʔó</i>	<i>ó</i>	<i>ó</i>	<i>aaó</i>	ᵗ̃(
ᵗ)	<i>ʔu</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>ũ</i>	<i>au</i>	ᵗ)
ᵗ̃)	<i>ʔú</i>	<i>ú</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>aoo</i>	ᵗ̃)
ᵗᵗ	<i>ʔe</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>aey</i>	ᵗᵗ
ᵗ̃ᵗ	<i>ʔy-</i>	<i>ay-</i>	<i>'a-</i>	<i>ay-</i>	ᵗ̃ᵗ
ᵗ(	<i>-á</i>	<i>-á</i>	<i>-a</i>	<i>-aa</i>	ᵗ(
ᵗ̃	<i>-â</i>	<i>-â</i>	<i>-á</i>	<i>-a</i>	ᵗ̃
ᵗᵗ	<i>-i</i>	<i>-i</i>	<i>-i</i>	<i>-e</i>	ᵗᵗ
ᵗ̃ᵗ	<i>-í</i>	<i>-í</i>	<i>-í</i>	<i>-i</i>	ᵗ̃ᵗ
ᵗ(	<i>-o</i>	<i>-o</i>	<i>-o</i>	<i>-o</i>	ᵗ(
ᵗ̃(	<i>-ó</i>	<i>-ó</i>	<i>-ó</i>	<i>-ao, -oo</i>	ᵗ̃(
ᵗ)	<i>-u</i>	<i>-u</i>	<i>-ũ</i>	<i>-u</i>	ᵗ)
ᵗ̃)	<i>-ú</i>	<i>-ú</i>	<i>-u</i>	<i>-oo, -o</i>	ᵗ̃)
ᵗᵗ	<i>-e</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-ey</i>	ᵗᵗ
ᵗ̃ᵗ	<i>-y-</i>	<i>-y-</i>	<i>-y-</i>	<i>-y-</i>	ᵗ̃ᵗ
ᵗ(	<i>-r-</i>	<i>-r-</i>	<i>-r-</i>	<i>-r-</i>	ᵗ(
ᵗᵗ	<i>-k</i>	<i>-k</i>	<i>-k</i>	<i>-k</i>	ᵗᵗ
ᵗ̃ᵗ	<i>-m</i>	<i>-m</i>	<i>-m</i>	<i>-m</i>	ᵗ̃ᵗ
ᵗ̃ᵗ	<i>-l</i>	<i>-l</i>	<i>-l</i>	<i>-l</i>	ᵗ̃ᵗ
ᵗ̃ᵗ	<i>-n</i>	<i>-n</i>	<i>-n</i>	<i>-n</i>	ᵗ̃ᵗ
ᵗ̃ᵗ	<i>-p</i>	<i>-p</i>	<i>-p</i>	<i>-p</i>	ᵗ̃ᵗ
ᵗ̃ᵗ	<i>-r</i>	<i>-r</i>	<i>-r</i>	<i>-r</i>	ᵗ̃ᵗ
ᵗ̃ᵗ	<i>-t</i>	<i>-t</i>	<i>-t</i>	<i>-t</i>	ᵗ̃ᵗ
ᵗ̃ᵗ	<i>-ang</i>	<i>-ang</i>	<i>-ãñ</i>	–	ᵗ̃ᵗ
ᵗ̃ᵗ	<i>-ng</i>	<i>-ng</i>	<i>-ñ</i>	<i>-ng</i>	ᵗ̃ᵗ

Diagram 6: Romanisation systems

phonetic transcription	native grapheme	transliteration
[i]	ᵚᵛ	<i>i</i>
	ᵚᵛ̄	<i>í</i>
[e~ɛ]	ᵚ	<i>e</i>
	ᵚᵛ	<i>-ya</i>
[a]	ᵚᵛ	<i>-á</i>
[ʌ]	ᵚ̄	<i>â</i>
[ʌ]	ᵚ	<i>a</i>
[u]	ᵚᵛ	<i>u</i>
[u]	ᵚᵛ̄	<i>ú</i>
[o]	ᵚᵛ	<i>o</i>
[o]	ᵚᵛ̄	<i>ó</i>

Diagram 11: Transliteration and transcription of Lepcha vowels

Similarly, in this context, according to Sprigg, there is a discrepancy between the oral and nasalised sets of vowels that would account for spelling variations between $ᵚᵛ u$ and the consonant-inherent vowel *a*, i.e. when no vowel diacritic is added to a consonant symbol. The three spread vowels $ᵚᵛ u$ [u], *a* [ə] and $ᵚᵛ ḁ$ [a] are clearly distinguished from each other in syllables with non-nasal initial consonants and, according to Sprigg, in such syllables no spelling variations should occur. Sprigg claims that the situation in syllables with an initial nasal consonant is such that only two spread vowel units may be distinguished from each other, i.e. $ᵚᵛ u$ [ũ] ~ $ᵚ a$ [ã] vs. $ᵚᵛ ḁ$ [ã], which results in spelling variations between $ᵚᵛ u$ and the consonant-inherent vowel *a* (Sprigg 1989: 229).

The variation between spellings with *a* and *á*, in words like $ᵚᵛ sám$ ‘three’, which is sometimes written $ᵚᵛ sam$, could, Sprigg explains, be attributed to the difference between open syllables and closed syllables. In open or vowel-final syllables, there is a distinction between an open front or back vowel [a~ɑ], romanised as *á*, and a half-close central vowel [ə], romanised as *a*. In consonant-final or closed syllables, the half-close central vowel [ə], is written as $ᵚ̄ ḁ$ and the vowel

realised as [a~ɑ] may be written either @ *á* or not explicitly indicated by any consonant grapheme implied inherent vowel romanised here as *a* (Sprigg 1983: 317).

CHAPTER THREE
PARTS OF SPEECH

Lepcha distinguishes nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, pronouns, numerals, postpositions, suffixes, conjunctions and particles. Nouns refer to objects, entities and individuals, and express the subject or object of verbs. Verbs describe states, events and actions, and relate to the referents of noun phrases. Adjectives modify nouns, while adverbs modify verbs to specify the time, manner, place or direction of the event described by the verb. Adverbs may also modify adjectives or other adverbs. Suffixes and postpositions express a range of semantic relations between the parts of speech they attach themselves to or combine with. Conjunctions are used to connect or combine words, phrases, clauses or sentences. Particles add a semantic notion to a whole sentence. Nouns, pronouns, adjectives and numerals comprise the group of nominals which may be pluralised and take nominal suffixes or postpositions. Verbs may be marked by auxiliary verbs and take verbal suffixes. A small group of suffixes and particles is used to mark nouns, verbs and whole sentences.

This chapter provides an overview of derivational processes in Lepcha. It should be noted that an analysis of word classes or parts of speech in a language cannot be made on purely formal grounds. A single root can belong to more than one word class, that is, it may function as a noun, as an adjective or as a verb. Apart from looking at the internal structure of words, the syntactic context and semantic properties of words should also be taken into account.

3.1 *Derivational affixes*

When we look at the internal structure of nouns, verbs, adjectives and adverbs, we can recognise certain derivational relationships. For example, we see that verbs are often monosyllabic, whereas nouns, adjectives and adverbs often consist of two or more syllables. In many

nouns and adjectives we recognise the prefix \mathfrak{A} *ʔá-* and a verbal root, as in the following examples.

\mathfrak{S} <i>ʔít</i> ‘create’	$\mathfrak{A}\mathfrak{S}$ <i>ʔáʔít</i> ‘origin, creation’
\mathfrak{L} <i>ʔóm</i> ‘shine’	$\mathfrak{A}\mathfrak{L}$ <i>ʔáʔóm</i> ‘radiance’
\mathfrak{G} <i>gó</i> ‘be happy’	$\mathfrak{A}\mathfrak{G}$ <i>ʔágó</i> ‘joy, happiness’
\mathfrak{K} <i>kón</i> ‘taste’	$\mathfrak{A}\mathfrak{K}$ <i>ʔákón</i> ‘taste’
\mathfrak{W} <i>gek</i> ‘be born’	$\mathfrak{A}\mathfrak{W}$ <i>ʔágek</i> ‘birth’
\mathfrak{N} <i>li</i> ‘say, speak’	$\mathfrak{A}\mathfrak{N}$ <i>ʔálin</i> ‘speech, talk’
\mathfrak{Z} <i>zo</i> ‘eat’	$\mathfrak{A}\mathfrak{Z}$ <i>ʔázóm</i> ‘rice, food’
\mathfrak{R} <i>ryú</i> ‘be good’	$\mathfrak{A}\mathfrak{R}$ <i>ʔáryúm</i> ‘good’
\mathfrak{L} <i>li</i> ‘carry’	$\mathfrak{A}\mathfrak{L}$ <i>ʔálim</i> ‘heavy’
\mathfrak{D} <i>dúm</i> ‘be white’	$\mathfrak{A}\mathfrak{D}$ <i>ʔádúm</i> ‘white’

The prefix \mathfrak{A} *ʔá-*, phonetically [ʔa], may be shortened to [ʔ], e.g. $\mathfrak{A}\mathfrak{H}$ *ʔáhrún* [ʔa-ɾun] vs. \mathfrak{H} *hrún* [ʔrun], $\mathfrak{A}\mathfrak{H}$ *ʔáhyâng* [ʔa-hjəŋ] vs. \mathfrak{H} *hyâng* [ʔhjəŋ]. This optional variation prompted George Mainwaring to state that ‘the retention or rejection of the *á*, is merely a matter of euphonic consideration, it is in general more elegantly retained’ (Mainwaring 1876: 120). The prefix at once reminds one of the Burmese nominalising prefix *a-*.

The suffix \mathfrak{L} *-lá* creates adverbs when it is added to the verbal root, e.g. \mathfrak{R} *ryú* ‘be good’, $\mathfrak{R}\mathfrak{L}$ *ryúlá* ‘well’, \mathfrak{H} *thyen* ‘laugh’, $\mathfrak{H}\mathfrak{L}$ *thyenlá* ‘laughingly’.

The suffix \mathfrak{L} *-lât* is added to verbs or adjectives to create abstract nouns and *nomina actionis*, as $\mathfrak{Z}\mathfrak{L}$ *zúk-lât* ‘action, performance’ from \mathfrak{Z} *zúk* ‘make’, and $\mathfrak{H}\mathfrak{L}$ *thyenlât* ‘laughter’ from \mathfrak{H} *thyen* ‘laugh’, $\mathfrak{G}\mathfrak{L}$ *gánlât* ‘oldness, old age’ from \mathfrak{G} *gán* ‘old’, $\mathfrak{N}\mathfrak{L}$ *nók-lât* ‘blackness’ from \mathfrak{N} *nók* ‘black’, $\mathfrak{X}\mathfrak{L}$ *ʔállât* ‘freshness, newness’ from \mathfrak{X} *ʔál* ‘new’.

The suffix \mathfrak{K} *-ko* creates concrete nouns from verbs or nouns, as $\mathfrak{N}\mathfrak{K}$ *línko* ‘speech, statement’ from \mathfrak{N} *li* ‘say’, and $\mathfrak{Z}\mathfrak{K}$ *záko* ‘planet’ from \mathfrak{Z} *zá* ‘circle’, $\mathfrak{X}\mathfrak{K}$ *chúko* ‘energy, force’ from \mathfrak{X} *chú* ‘strength’, $\mathfrak{C}\mathfrak{K}$ *choko* ‘paper’ from \mathfrak{C} *cho* ‘book’, $\mathfrak{S}\mathfrak{K}$ *tángko* ‘basket’ from \mathfrak{S} *táng* ‘bundle’.

The morpheme \mathfrak{L} *lóm* ‘way, road, path’ adds its meaning to nouns to create manner nouns, e.g. $\mathfrak{D}\mathfrak{L}$ *mát* ‘do’, $\mathfrak{D}\mathfrak{L}\mathfrak{L}$ *mátlóm* ‘conduct, act of conducting, guidance’.

The suffix ལ་ -*mú* creates nominals denoting people or things deriving from a certain place of origin, and is added to place names or location words, e.g. རྩ་ལོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ renjóngmú ‘Sikkimese’, ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ pátmú ‘Tibetan’, ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ promú ‘Bhutanese’, ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ gyagármú ‘Indian’, ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ philíngmú ‘Englishman’, ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ tíngmú ‘plainsfolk’. Another element ལ་ -*mú*, derived from ལ་ལྷོ་ lámú ‘mother’, occurs as a part of compounds in which it expresses the sense ‘main, origin, mother’, e.g. ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ rungnyít lúngmú ‘the main stream of the Rungnyít’.

The suffix ལ་ -*lu* forms deverbative nouns, e.g. ལ་ mát ‘do’, ལ་ལྷོ་ mátlu ‘habit, custom’, ལ་ dun ‘say, tell’, ལ་ལྷོ་ dunlu ‘remark’. The suffix ལ་ -*thup* creates adjectives from verbs, e.g. ལ་ zo ‘eat’, ལ་ལྷོ་ zómthup ‘edible’, ལ་ zúk ‘make’, ལ་ལྷོ་ zúktthup ‘manageable’. The suffix ལ་ -*shet* can be recognised in nouns and adjectives that are formed from verbs, e.g. ལ་ thóng ‘drink’, ལ་ལྷོ་ thóngshet ‘drinkable’, ལ་ li ‘say, speak’, ལ་ལྷོ་ línshet ‘speech, means of speaking’, ལ་ ngán ‘remain, sit’, ལ་ལྷོ་ ngánshet ‘seat’.

The word ལ་ kup ‘child, small’, also ལ་ལྷོ་ lákup ‘child’, acts as a diminutive suffix in nouns, e.g. ལ་ bán ‘knife’, ལ་ལྷོ་ bánkup ‘small knife’, ལ་ lóng ‘boy’, ལ་ལྷོ་ lóngkup ‘small boy’. The word ལ་ kup may also be attached to other nominals, e.g. ལ་ cu ‘small, little’, ལ་ལྷོ་ cukup ‘a little bit’, ལ་ lare ‘this’, ལ་ལྷོ་ larekup ‘just this’, ལ་ལྷོ་ kátkup or ལ་ལྷོ་ kátlákup ‘alone’.

3.2 Gender-specific endings

Lepcha has no grammatical gender. There are gender-specific derivational suffixes, some of which are given below with examples.

ལ་-bu	‘male of animals’
ལ་-mót	‘female of animals’
ལ་ལྷོ་ mónmót	‘sow’
ལ་ལྷོ་ mónbu	‘boar’
ལ་ལྷོ་ sakamót	‘female deer, doe’

ໂ– <i>bo</i>	‘father, uncastrated male parent animal’
໕ໂ <i>mónbo</i>	‘boar, uncastrated male of swine’
໔ໂ <i>lóngbo</i>	‘bull’
໓ໂ <i>bíkbo</i>	‘bull, steer’
໓– <i>gú</i>	‘female animal that has given birth’
໓໓ <i>bíkgú</i>	‘cow’
໕໓ <i>mán-gú</i>	‘sow’
໔໔ <i>sakagú</i>	‘doe, female deer’
໔໕ <i>sa?árgú</i>	‘female goat’
໔໖ <i>sungvogú</i>	‘female buffalo’
໔໗ <i>saburgú</i>	‘female musk deer’
໔໔ <i>lóng</i>	‘ox, steer’
໓໔ <i>bíklóng</i>	‘ox’
໔໕໔ <i>savínglóng</i>	‘stag’
໔໖໔ <i>sungvolóng</i>	‘wild buffalo’
໔໗໔ <i>saburlóng</i>	‘musk deer’
໓– <i>tsu</i>	‘male of pigs and goats’
໔໕໓ <i>sa?ártsu</i>	‘goat, billy goat’
໔໔໓ <i>sakatsu</i>	‘buck, stag’
໕໓໓ <i>móntsu</i>	‘boar, uncastrated boar’
໓– <i>mi</i>	‘female animal that has not had young’
໕໓໓ <i>mónmi</i>	‘fallow sow’
໓– <i>bop</i>	‘young of bulls’
໓໔໔ <i>bíklóngbop</i>	‘bullock, castrated male bovine’
໔໓– <i>cúng</i>	‘young of bulls’
໓໔໔໔ <i>bíklóngcúng</i>	‘young bull’
໔໔໔໔ <i>lóngcúng</i>	‘young bull’
໔– <i>sháng</i>	‘barren, sterile’
໕໔໔ <i>mónsháng</i>	‘barren sow’
໓– <i>tâng</i>	‘corpulent male animal, pig or dog’

ꠄꠞꠟ ꠑátâng	‘a fat male beast’
ꠄꠞꠟꠟ ꠑajutâng	‘fat male dog’
ꠄꠞꠟꠟ ꠑóntâng	‘fat boar’
ꠄꠟ –bom	‘brooding female animal’
ꠄꠟꠟ ꠑíkbom	‘female hen having chickens’

3.3 Compounding

Compounding is a common process in Lepcha word formation. A compound may involve verbal as well as nominal constituents.

ꠄꠟ ꠑi ‘curry’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑáfong ‘green’, ꠄꠟꠞꠞ ꠑifong ‘green leafy vegetable’

ꠄꠞ ꠑthyák ‘recognise, identify’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑáthyák ‘head’, ꠄꠞꠞꠞ ꠑthyákdám ‘scalp’, ꠄꠞꠞꠟ ꠑthyáktuk ‘hat, cap’.

ꠄꠞꠟ ꠑlót ‘repeat’, ꠄꠞꠞꠟ ꠑlótthi ‘come back again’, ꠄꠞꠞꠟ ꠑlóttho ‘put again’, ꠄꠞꠞꠟ ꠑlótbi ‘give back’, ꠄꠞꠞꠟ ꠑlótzúk ‘remake’.

ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑátásóm ‘hair’, ꠄꠞꠞꠟ ꠑtsómbheng ‘single hair’ ꠄꠞꠞꠟ ꠑtsómriék ‘ribbon’, ꠄꠞꠞꠟ ꠑtsómcúng ‘pigtail’, ꠄꠞꠞꠟ ꠑtsómtrat ‘comb’.

Compounding sometimes results in the dropping of prefixes or bound morphemes, e.g. ꠄꠞꠟ ꠑsatsuk ‘sun’, ꠄꠞꠟ ꠑtsukkyer ‘west’.

ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑákâ ‘hand’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑkajóm ‘finger’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑkatáp ‘fist’ ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑkadóm ‘thumb’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑkatyám ‘muscle of the arm’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑkathi ‘little finger, pinkie’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑkayók ‘fingertip’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑkayóng ‘middle finger’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑkalít ‘ring finger’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑkalyók ‘palm of the hand’.

ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑáthong ‘leg’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑthongjóm ‘toe’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑthongtung ‘heel’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑthongpyól ‘footprint’

ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑádyáng ‘lower leg’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑdyánglyók ‘sole of foot’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑdyángtung ‘heel’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑdyángpók ‘calf’, ꠄꠞꠞ ꠑdyângpak ‘knee’.

ꠗꠘ꠆ ꠑámík ‘eye’, ꠘ꠆ꠄ ꠓíkccóm ‘eyelash, eyebrow’, ꠘ꠆ꠄ꠆ ꠓíkmyóng ‘eyelid’, ꠘ꠆ꠄ꠆ ꠓíkgrúng ‘tear’.

ꠄꠄ ꠑáfo ‘tooth’, ꠄꠄ꠆ ꠑonyel ‘gums’ ꠄꠄ꠆ ꠑogóm ‘molar’, ꠄꠄ꠆ ꠑozâl ‘incisor’ ꠄꠄ꠆ ꠑolún ‘wisdom tooth’.

ꠄ ꠑo ‘eat, food, rice’, ꠘ ꠑí ‘smell’, ꠄꠘ ꠑorí ‘fragrant rice’

꠆ ꠑhám- ‘thing, object’, ꠆꠆ ꠑhámccâng ‘animal’, ꠆꠆꠆ ꠑhámccík ‘insect’, ꠆꠆꠆ ꠑhámccóng ‘plant’, ꠆꠆꠆ ꠑhámccu ‘worm’, ꠆꠆꠆ ꠑhámccót ‘fruit’, ꠆꠆꠆ ꠑhámcclí ‘seed’, ꠆꠆꠆ ꠑhámccvyet ‘question’

Sometimes it is hard to distinguish between compounds and juxtaposed elements, e.g. ꠘ꠆꠆ ꠑimân ‘kin, offspring, relatives’ (literally ‘flesh and blood’), ꠆꠆꠆ ꠑhánlon ‘not simultaneously’ (literally ‘before and after’).

3.4 Reduplication

Lexical reduplication yields adverbials of time, e.g. ꠆꠆ ꠑám ‘year’, ꠆꠆꠆ ꠑámmám ‘yearly’, ꠄꠄ ꠑasó ‘yesterday’, ꠄꠄ꠆ ꠑasósó ‘lately’. This process is different from the syntactic reduplication of words in colloquial speech, e.g. ꠄ ꠑú ‘who’, ꠄꠄ꠆ ꠑúúú ‘such as who’, ‘who exactly’, ꠆꠆ ꠑabá ‘where’, ꠆꠆꠆ ꠑabásabá ‘such as where’, ‘where exactly’, which may well be an areal phenomenon influenced by Nepali.

3.5 Causative verbs

Lepcha causatives express transitive notions derived from intransitive meanings or causative motions derived from a base meaning. In the former cases, the subject of the intransitive verb, e.g. ‘die’, ‘stay’, corresponds to the object of the derived transitive verbs, e.g. ‘kill’, ‘keep’. In the latter cases, the semantic relationship between the two verbs connected by means of this now defunct morphological process is more subtle, e.g. ‘push’ vs. ‘cause to quiver’. A closed class of causative verbs is derived by palatalisation of the initial consonant of the base verb. Lepcha native orthography, as reflected in most trans-

literation and transcription systems, uses the symbol *y* representing the affixed glide /y/ to indicate palatalisation of consonants, as in ᳵ *kya* [kja], ᳶ *pya* [pja]. The palatal nasal [ɲ], however, is written in Lepcha orthography with the consonant sign ᳷ , which is transliterated here as /ny/. Some examples of causative verbs and the verbs they are derived from by palatalisation of the initial consonant are listed here.

ᳵ <i>nók</i>	‘push’
ᳶ <i>nyók</i>	‘cause to quiver, shake’
᳷ <i>mák</i>	‘die’
᳸ <i>myák</i>	‘kill’
᳹ <i>bám</i>	‘dwell, stay, reside’
ᳺ <i>byám</i>	‘keep, leave behind’
᳻ <i>plâ</i>	‘come forth, come out, rise’
᳼ <i>plyâ</i>	‘produce, bring forward’
᳽ <i>lú</i>	‘rise’
᳾ <i>lyú</i>	‘erect’
᳿ <i>ʔum</i>	‘ripe, sweet, tasty’
ᳺ <i>ʔyum</i>	‘ripen, bring to maturity’
᳽ <i>tyul</i>	‘fall’
᳾ <i>tyal</i>	‘fell’ (also spelt ᳿ <i>tel</i>)

When the stem of the root verb ends in a vowel, in some cases a final /t/ is added to the derived causative, viz. ᳽ *glú* ‘fall down’, ᳾ *glyat* (also spelt ᳿ *glet*) ‘drop, decline, suspend’ and ᳽ *bu* ‘carry’, ᳾ *bet* ‘load’.

CHAPTER FOUR

NOMINAL MORPHOLOGY

This chapter is devoted to the morphosyntax of nominals, which comprise the following parts of speech: nouns, pronouns, adjectives and numerals. Nouns lack a grammatical gender distinction and show no agreement with articles, adjectives or verbs. Pronouns include personal, demonstrative, interrogative and indefinite pronouns. Adjectives may be used adnominally, predicatively or independently as nominal heads.

Nominals may be pluralised and may take case endings. Case endings are suffixes or postpositions attached to the nominal. In Lepcha, it is possible to make a distinction between ‘genuine’ case endings, which are suffixes that exhibit morphological behaviour proper to suffixes and postpositional case endings, which do not show any morphophonological interaction with the nominal which they modify. The set of ‘true’ case endings, as it were, comprises only the definite article ɽ -*re* ‘the’ and the dative marker ᄁ -*m*. All other case endings are actually postpositions. This having been said, all such case endings are treated together in this chapter for the sake of convenience. Two or more case endings may co-occur attached to a single noun when this yields a desired and semantically plausible combination.

A number of Lepcha morphemes index grammatical categories which can be combined with constituents of different syntactic status, i.e. with nouns, with verbs and with entire clauses. The apparent difference in sense expressed by such morphemes, e.g. the locative morpheme ɽ -*ká*, is a straightforward function of the difference in syntactic status of the constituent which they modify. The morpheme in question can be shown to express the same invariant meaning. For coherence of presentation, such morphemes are discussed in all the relevant chapters of this grammar and the sections pertaining to such morphemes are cross-referenced.

4.1 *Number*

Plural number in nouns is expressed by the suffixes ཉམ་ *-pang* and ཉམ་ *-sang*. The non-human plural suffix ཉམ་ *-pang* (PL.NH) is used to express plurality of animals, things and, indeed, all entities except humans. The human plural suffix ཉམ་ *-sang* (PL.H) indexes the plurality of human beings and personified, anthropomorphic beings such as benevolent heavenly creatures, gods, goddesses and good spirits. It is a point of ethnopsychological interest that nouns denoting benevolent supernatural beings take the human plural suffix ཉམ་ *-sang* (PL.H), whereas nouns denoting malevolent beings take the non-human plural suffix ཉམ་ *-pang* (PL.NH), e.g. རྩལ་ཉམ་ *rumdár-sang* ‘gods’ vs. རྩལ་ཉམ་ *rumdár-pang* ‘demons’. Despite the fact that the distinction described here between the two plural suffixes is used by most speakers of Lepcha, a small number of Lepcha speakers use the plural suffixes differently. These less fluent speakers use both suffixes interchangeably in free variation, without making any distinction between human or non-human referents.

1 རིཉམ་
bik-pang
cow-PL.NH
‘cows’

2 ཇཉམ་
cho-pang
book-PL.NH
‘books’

3 རྩལ་ཉམ་
ʔóng-sang
boy-PL.H
‘boys’

4 རྩལ་ཉམ་
rum-sang
god-PL.H
‘gods’

- 5 ཅེ་འཇོ་ཅེ་འཇོ་པ་
thámbík thám câng-pang
 insect animal-PL.NH
 ‘animals, creatures’
- 6 ཅེ་ལྷ་ལོ་ལྷ་ལ་
faleng nómleng-sang
 young.boy young.girl-PL.H
 ‘youngsters, teenagers’
- 7 ཅེ་ལྷ་ལོ་ལྷ་ལ་ཅེ་ལྷ་ལོ་ལྷ་ལ་
múng-sá ʔáthong ʔákâ-pang ʔámel ʔátím nyí
 devil-GEN leg hand-PL.NH hair big be
 ‘The hair on the devil’s limbs was very long.’
 ‘The devil’s limbs were very hairy.’

About the distinction between ལ་ -*sang* (PL.H) and པ་ -*pang* (PL.NH) George Mainwaring wrote:

The difference between the two plural terms, is, *sang*, is applied chiefly to human beings; *pang*, to inferior animals, and to inanimate things. *pang*, may, however, be made to denote the plural of human, or inferior beings, and of inanimate things, indifferently. *sang*, although it may be applied to all living animals, human or inferior, can never be correctly affixed as a plural sign to inanimate things...’ (1876: 27)

The plural category in Lepcha is not equivalent in meaning to the plural category in English or, for that matter, most European languages. In English, the grammatical category of plural indexes a meaning which means simply more than one of a countable entity or item. The Lepcha plural category denotes manifoldness. A fundamental distinction between manifoldness and plurality lies in the fact that plurality is numerically definite, i.e. European-type plurality expressly denotes a quantity greater than one of a countable item. Therefore, the plural is automatically used when an English nominal is modified by a numeral denoting a quantity greater than one, e.g. two boys. It is in-

herent in the meaning of manifoldness that a definite number of items precludes manifoldness. This is why the Lepcha ‘plural’ suffixes are not used when a nominal is modified by a numeral denoting a quantity greater than one, e.g. Lepcha (ꠄ꠆ꠘ *cho sám* ‘three books’. The definite quantity expressed by the numeral is incompatible with the meaning of manifoldness denoted by the Lepcha plural suffixes, e.g. (8).

- 8 ꠄ꠆ꠘ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ
kasu-sá ?ákup fali nyí-wám
 1S.OBL-GEN child four be-PRG
 ‘I have four children.’

By the same token, whereas English has a zero-marked singular, Lepcha lacks a singular. A form such as (ꠄ *cho* ‘book’, in (ꠄ ꠆ꠘ *cho sám* ‘three books’ is simply not marked for number.

A Lepcha plural ending does not denote, but stresses what we call plurality in English. English or European plurality of a noun is often indicated by the context and in such cases is not expressed by a plural suffix in Lepcha. Modifiers like ‘many’ or ‘how many’ will take a plural in English, but not in Lepcha, for manifoldness need not necessarily be stressed in such a context, e.g. (9), (10).

- 9 ꠄ꠆ꠘ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ
?ádo-sá ?ákup nyí-wám
 2S.OBL-GEN child be-PRG
 ‘Do you have children?’

- 10 ꠄ꠆ꠘ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ ꠄ꠆ꠘ
?ádo-sá ?ányúr-re satet ?átím go
 2S.OBL-GEN ear-DEF how.much big be
 ‘Your ears are so big!’

Moreover, Lepcha plural endings such as the human plural suffix ꠄ꠆ꠘ *-sang* can be used with proper names or kinship terms, e.g. ꠄ꠆ꠘ꠆ꠘ꠆ꠘ *nyímá-sang* ‘Nyima and his friends’. Here the human plural suffix ꠄ꠆ꠘ *-sang* conveys the sense of English ‘and the like’ or ‘and company’ or Latin *cum suis*. In this sense, the suffix ꠄ꠆ꠘ *-sang* de-

notes a group surrounding a particular person. Since *Nyima* is the proper name of an individual, of which there is only one, a ‘literal’ translation with an English plural form, i.e. **Nyimas*, would yield an essentially different and somewhat absurd meaning. The notion expressed is the identification of a group surrounding an individual or set of individuals or, in other words, of more specimens of the same. The Lepcha plural in *-sang* occurs in such expressions as རྒྱུ་ལྷོ་ རྒྱུ་ལྷོ་ རྒྱུ་ལྷོ་ *?ábo ?ámú-sang* [father mother-PL.H], in the meaning ‘family’ or ‘forefathers’, e.g. (11).

The lack of plural suffix in (13) leaves unspecified the number of friends who have left the speaker, whereas the use of the human plural suffix *-sang* in (14) enhances the sense of desolation of the speaker and the manifoldness of the friends which have abandoned him. In sentence (15), the numeral ཅེ་ *kát* ‘one’ is used to express explicit singular number.

- 11 ཅེ་ལེ། རྒྱུ་ལྷོ་ རྒྱུ་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་།
káyú róng-sang-re ?ácá-lá lúk-do
 1P Lepcha-PL.H-DEF still get.up-self

ཚེ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་།
ma-khut-ne-bám
 NEG-be.able-NEG-PRG

‘We Lepcha are still unable to stand up for ourselves.’

- 12 རྒྱུ་ལྷོ་ རྒྱུ་ལྷོ་ རྒྱུ་ལྷོ་།
tíngmú-sang ?ánók gum
 plainsfolk-PL.H black be.AST

‘Plainsfolk are black.’
 ‘People from the plains are black.’

- 13 ཅེ་ལེ། ཅེ་ ཅེ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་།
kasu tyól fát-nón ma
 1S.OBL friend lose-RES AST

‘My friend has disappeared.’
 ‘My friends have disappeared.’

- 14 ཇུ་ལྷན་ལྷན་ ཇུ་ལྷན་
kasu tyól-sang fát-nón ma
 1S.OBL friend-PL.H lose-RES AST

‘My friends have disappeared.’

- 15 ཇུ་ལྷན་གྱི་ ཇུ་ལྷན་
kasu tyól-kát fát-nón ma
 1S.OBL friend-one lose-RES AST

‘One of my friends has disappeared.’

The plural morphemes ཇུ་ལྷན་ *-sang* (PL.H) and ཇུ་ལྷན་ *-pang* (PL.NH) are directly suffixed to the nominal constituent which they modify. This entails that the suffixes precede all case endings, postpositions, articles or demonstrative pronouns which modify the nominal, but that, when a nominal consists of a noun immediately followed by a modifying adjective, the morphemes ཇུ་ལྷན་ *-sang* (PL.H) and ཇུ་ལྷན་ *-pang* (PL.NH) follow the adjective, i.e. they follow the nominal constituent as a whole.

- 16 ཇུ་ལྷན་གྱི་ཇུ་ལྷན་ ཇུ་ལྷན་
go ríngngá-sang-re-m gó ma
 1S child-PL.H-DEF-DAT be.happy AST

‘I am fond of children.’

- 17 ཇུ་ལྷན་གྱི་ ཇུ་ལྷན་གྱི་ ཇུ་ལྷན་
ǰálong muró ǰátím-sang ma-nyí-n
 now man big-PL.H NEG-be-NEG

‘There are no tall men around at the moment.’

The suffix ཇུ་ལྷན་ *-pang* (PL.NH), which is otherwise restricted to non-human referents, can be used with any nominal to convey the sense of a collective, group or gang.

- 18 ཇུ་ལྷན་
káyú-pang
 1P-PL.NH

‘we (collectively, as a group)’

- 19 ཕུ་ལྷོ་ རྒྱལ་ རྒྱལ་ རྒྱལ་ རྒྱལ་ རྒྱལ་
hu-nu li thámchang ?áre ?ábá-pang
 3S-ABL say animal this here-PL.NH

ལེ་ རྒྱལ་
lá nyí-wám
 also be-PRG

‘He said that such an animal also lives over here with us.’

When the definite article རྒྱལ་-re is added, the specificity of the group in question is indicated.

- 20 རྒྱལ་ རྒྱལ་
káyú róng-pang-re
 1P Lepcha-PL.NH-DEF

‘We, the Lepcha.’

‘We, as Lepcha’

- 21 རྒྱལ་ རྒྱལ་
káyú róng-sang-re
 1P Lepcha-PL.H-DEF

‘We Lepcha...’

‘Us Lepcha...’

The meaning of the morpheme རྒྱལ་-sang is in fact ‘whole, entire’ and the meaning of the morpheme རྒྱལ་-pang is ‘thing, things’. With regard to the non-human plural marker རྒྱལ་-pang, Grünwedel suggests that རྒྱལ་-pang was not only used as a non-human plural marker attached to nominals, but also as a nominal head: *mlo-pän* [*mlo-pang*] ‘things’, *să-re gŭn-nă pän* [*sare gunna-pang*] ‘every thing’, *kă-sŭ-să pän* [*kasu-sá-pang*] ‘my things, mine’ (Grünwedel 1898a: 209). In his grammar, Mainwaring mentions the form *nyí-pang* ‘possessions’ (Mainwaring 1876: 97). Grünwedel also suggests that the use of རྒྱལ་-pang with human referents indicates a certain disrespect for these

referents (Grünwedel 1898a: 209). Although we do not, or no longer, find these usages, if the meaning of *ṣṣ* -*pang* was indeed at one point strongly associated with ‘things’, an implied disrespect would have made sense.

I have not been able to corroborate the analysis of the morpheme *ṣṣ* -*nyum* as a pronominal dual suffix, or as a dual suffix for nouns, as was first reported by Mainwaring in 1876, and repeated by Sinha (1966: 67) and Támsáng (1978: 10), for example in Mainwaring *maro nyum* ‘two persons’ (1876: 27), *go nun to nyum ká byi sho* ‘to whom (two) I shall give it’ (1876: 42). If the speaker intends to express the dual number of nouns explicitly, the numeral *ṣṣ* *nyet* ‘two’ is used, as in example (22).

- 22 *ṣṣ* *ṣṣ* *ṣṣ* *ṣṣ*
muró-nyet thi-wám
 man-two reach-PRG
 ‘Two men are arriving’

Grünwedel analyses *ṣṣ* -*nyum* as a possible variant of the bound pronominal morpheme *ṣṣ* -*nyím*, as in *a-nyüm* [*ʔányum*] ‘you two’, *kǎ-nyüm* [*kanyum*] ‘us two’, but this usage appears to have fallen into disuse (Grünwedel 1898a: 108). Mainwaring provides examples such as *áre nyum* [*ʔáre nyum*] ‘these two’ (1876: 43), *áre nyumká sare ryú* [*ʔáre nyumká sare ryú*] ‘of these two which is good?’ (1876: 33), reflecting a usage of the morpheme *ṣṣ* -*nyum* in the sense of ‘a pair’. We indeed still find -*nyum* used in this meaning in spoken Lepcha today, e.g. (23).

- 23 *ṣṣ* *ṣṣ* *ṣṣ* *ṣṣ* *ṣṣ* *ṣṣ*
ʔáre nyum-ká sare ryú-wung gó
 this pair-LOC which good-PTC Q
 ‘Which of these two is better?’

4.2 The definite and indefinite article

The numeral *ṣṣ* *kát* ‘one’ is not an indefinite article as such, but can be used in some of the same functions as the indefinite article in English, e.g. (15), (24) and (25), where the speaker wishes to make explicit the singularity of the referent.

24 ཅུ་ལོ་འཇུག་པའི་ལོ་ལྷོ་
hu lát-thi-bú-re nám-kát nahán nón
 3S return-reach-FCT-DEF year-one before RES
 ‘His return here was a year ago’
 ‘He returned here a year ago’

25 རྩོད་པའི་མཉམ་པོ་
řingngá-kát dá-nyí-tho ma
 child-one sleep-be-EXH AST
 ‘One of the children is already asleep.’

Lepcha ལེ་ *kát* ‘one’ can be used in the sense of ‘a certain’ or ‘a’, e.g. མུ་ལོ་ལེ་ *muró kát* ‘a man, one man, a certain man’. It is also used in a few set phrases, like ལེ་ལོ་ རྩོད་པའི་ *kátnu plângká* ‘again and again’, literally ‘one and then on top of that’.

26 ལུ་ལོ་ ལུ་ལོ་ ལེ་ ལོ་ལྷོ་ ལོ་ལྷོ་
go-nu saróng bu-kát pacák-do tyak-hát
 1S-ABL today snake-one almost-self tread-PRF
 ‘I almost stepped on a snake today.’

27 མུ་ལོ་ ལེ་ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་ལོ་
muró kát-do lá ma-nyí-n
 man one-self also NEG-be-NEG
 ‘There isn’t even one person left.’

The ending ལེ་ *-re* is the Lepcha definite article (DEF). The definite article ལེ་ *-re* acts as a true suffix in that it forms a prosodic word unit with the stem or phrase with which it combines. The suffix ལེ་ *-re* is attached to nouns, e.g. མུ་ལོ་ལེ་ *muróre* ‘the man’. Like the definite article in English, the Lepcha definite article fulfils a thematic or even contrastive function, e.g. (20), (28), (29). The use of Lepcha ལེ་ *-re* as a topic marker is a function of the meaning of a definite article.

- 28 ལྷོ་ལཱ་ (རྩོམ་ཏེ) རྩུལ་
lí sare dorji-nun zúk-tho
 house which Dorji-ABL make-EXH

(ལྷོ་ལཱ་ རྩུལ་ ལྷོ་)
ʔore-re ʔáre gum
 that-DEF this be.AST

‘This is the house that Dorji built.’

- 29 རྩོམ་ཏེ་ རྩུལ་ (རྩོམ་ཏེ་ ལྷོ་)
fán-tho-bú mân-re món-sá gum
 burn-EXH-FCT meat-DEF pig-GEN be.AST

‘The meat that was burnt is pork.’

- 30 རྩོམ་ཏེ་ རྩུལ་ རྩོམ་ཏེ་
muró-nu zúk-tho-bú ʔázóm
 man-ABL make-EXH-FCT food

(ལྷོ་ལཱ་ རྩོམ་ཏེ་ རྩོམ་ཏེ་)
zo-shang-re ʔájóm ngún
 eat-INF-DEF easy become

‘It’s easy to eat food that somebody else has cooked.’

The fact that the numeral ལྷོ་ *kát* ‘one’ is a numeral and not a genuine indefinite article in the Western European sense is underscored by instances such as ལྷོ་ལཱ་ *kalók-kát-re* ‘the one mouse’, ‘that mouse’, in which ལྷོ་ *kát* is used in combination with the definite article ལཱ་ *-re*. The Lepcha definite article ལཱ་ *-re* is etymologically cognate with the root found in the Lepcha demonstratives རྩུལ་ *ʔáre* ‘this’ and ལྷོ་ *ʔore* ‘that’, and it is easy to see how the meaning of the definite article is derived from the deictic function of the demonstrative. This also explains the speech habit of some speakers who use the definite article ལཱ་ *-re* as a stopgap when they pause in mid-sentence to formulate their thoughts, e.g. (31).

31 རྩོམ་པོ་ལ་གཏམ་གསལ་གྱི་ལོ་ལྟོས་ལྟོས་ལྟོས་ མེད།
ren-do-m-re go-re jen-sung-lá kám
 sir-self-DAT-DEF 1S-DEF other-story-also little.bit

ལྷོ་ཤར་གྱི་ཤོ་ལོ་ལྟོས་ལྟོས་ལྟོས་ ལྷོ་ཤར་གྱི་ལོ་ལྟོས་ ལྟོས་ ལྟོས་
vyet-shang sákcing-bá-re gyá-nám-ká-re káyú
 inquire-INF think-then-DEF past-year-LOC-DEF 1P

རྩོམ་པོ་ལ་གཏམ་གསལ་གྱི་ལོ་ལྟོས་ ལྟོས་ ལྟོས་
róng-sang-sá-re hlo-múng-sá sung-re
 Lepcha-PL.H-GEN-DEF peak-devil-GEN story-DEF

ལྷོ་ཤར་གྱི་ཤོ་ལོ་ལྟོས་ ལྟོས་ ལྟོས་ ལྟོས་
gyá-sá munjú-sang-nu káyú-m-re
 past-GEN grandmother-PL.H-ABL 1P-DAT-DEF

དུང་པོ་ལ་གཏམ་གསལ་གྱི་ལོ་ལྟོས་ ལྟོས་ ལྟོས་
dun-pám-bá-re káyú-re ?otet-ká-re
 tell-PRG-when-DEF 1P-DEF that.much-LOC-DEF

རྩོམ་པོ་ལ་གཏམ་གསལ་གྱི་ལོ་ལྟོས་ ལྟོས་ ལྟོས་
ro-nu ryúlá ma-thyo-ne
 fear-ABL well NEG-hear-NEG

‘Sir, I want to ask you about another story as well.
 In the past, when our grandmothers told us the
 Lepcha stories about the devil of the mountains,
 we were so very frightened, that we didn’t listen to
 them very well.’

In contrast with English, the Lepcha definite article ལྟོས་ *-re* can be affixed to pronouns to single out the person or persons in question, e.g. (32), (33).

- 32 བཤམ་ལོང་ཀ་ མུ་ལཱ་ མུ་ལཱ་ ལཱ་ལཱ་ ལཱ་
huyú nóng-ká muró lare hu-re laryúm gum
 3P inside-LOC man this 3S-DEF good be.AST

‘Among them, this man, he is good.’

- 33 ལས་སུ་ རྩོམ་ སྐྱོད་
kasu-sá lóng-nu li-bá
 1S.OBL-GEN younger.sibling-ABL say-when

མུ་ལཱ་ ལཱ་
hu-re dok-bám
 3S-DEF be.ill-PRG

‘According to my younger brother, he is ill.’

The following two examples illustrate the contrast between the use and the non-use of the Lepcha definite article ལཱ་ *-re*, whereby the article in sentence (35) singles out the house in question and highlights the house as the topic.

- 34 ལཱ་ལས་ སྐྱོད་ ལཱ་ ལཱ་
lado-sá lí sabá gó
 2S.OBL-GEN house where Q

‘Where is your house?’

- 35 ལས་སུ་ སྐྱོད་ ལཱ་ལཱ་ ལཱ་ ལཱ་ ལཱ་
kasu-sá lí-re manegombú-ká nyí ma
 1S.OBL-GEN house-DEF Mane.Gomba-LOC be AST

‘My house is in Mane Gomba.’

There is no zero morpheme expressing an indefinite category in Lepcha, i.e. the non-use of the definite article in Lepcha is not tantamount to expressing the notion of indefiniteness with respect to a noun. In examples (36) and (37) below, one of two actants in the sentences, viz. ལཱ་ ལཱ་ *lóng-re* ‘the boy’, is marked by the definite article ལཱ་ *-re*, whereas ལཱ་ *kajú* ‘the dog’ is not, even though it is appropriate in the given context to translate ལཱ་ *kajú* into English with a definite article.

- 36 $\epsilon(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\epsilon}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$
kalók-kát-re-m *ʔályú-nun-do* *sót* *ma*
 mouse-one-DEF-DAT cat-ABL-self kill AST

‘The cat itself killed the mouse.’

- 37 $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$
ʔóng-re-m *kajú-nun-do* *tsúk* *ma*
 boy-DEF-DAT dog-ABL-self bite AST

‘The dog bit the boy.’

Clearly, the Lepcha definite article expresses another meaning than for example the English definite article category. In Lepcha, the grammatical category of definiteness, like the Lepcha plural, takes part in a privative opposition, and not in an equipollent opposition like the English definite article, that contrasts with the corresponding indefinite article. In colloquial speech, the definite article is even on occasion observed to occur twice, as if to emphasise the singling out of the referent, e.g. $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ *maró-re-re-m* [man-DEF-DEF-DAT] ‘to that very man’.

Mainwaring (1876: 23) and Támsáng (1980: 655) mention yet another ‘definite article’ $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ -*mu*. However, this morpheme is not an article, but an individuating suffix for people, evidently cognate with the first element in both Lepcha $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ *muzu* ‘body’ and Lepcha $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ *muró* ~ $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ *maró* ‘person’. We find this morpheme also in expressions such as $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ *mu sâ* ‘purify the body after childbirth’, with $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ *sâ* meaning ‘purify’, as in the expression $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ *mu míng sâ* ‘exorcise, purify ghosts’.

The human individuating suffix $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ -*mu* (IND) is attached directly to the numeral. In combination with $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ *kát* ‘one’, the individuating suffix conveys the sense of ‘that very person, that specific person’ and in combination with $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ *nyet* ‘two’ it conveys the sense of ‘both of them’. In the following sentences, Lepcha $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ -*mu* can be translated by the Nepali suffix -*cāhī*, although it would be premature to simply equate the two categories.

- 38 $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$ $\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})\dot{\kappa}(\dot{\kappa})$
ʔáre kát-mu *kát-ká* *bi*
 this one-IND one-LOC give

‘Give it to him and to no one else.’

- 39 (ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ) ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ
ʔore ʔyók hunyí nyet–mu–nu zúk
 that work 3D two–IND–ABL make

‘The two of them did that.’

- 40 (ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ) ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ
throm–ká kát–mu kát–re–m klóng
 market–LOC one–IND one–DEF–DAT send

‘Send this to him and to him alone at the market.’

4.3 Pronouns

4.3.1 Personal pronouns

The personal pronouns, listed below in Diagram 12, differentiate three persons and three numbers.

	singular	dual	plural
1st person	(ᄃᄃ <i>go</i> (1S))	ᄃᄃᄃᄃ <i>kányí</i> (1D)	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ <i>káyú</i> (1P)
2nd person	(ᄃᄃᄃ <i>hó</i> (2S))	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ <i>ʔányí</i> (2D)	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ <i>ʔáyú</i> (2P)
3rd person	ᄃᄃᄃ <i>hu</i> (3S)	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ <i>hunyí</i> (3D)	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ <i>huyú</i> (3P)

Diagram 12: Personal pronouns

The third person ᄃᄃ *hu* denotes only human referents. When the referent is non-human a demonstrative is used, except in the case of fables or other tales in which animals are personified and the third person pronoun ᄃᄃ *hu* is used to refer to these animals. The morpheme ᄃᄃ *ka*, first person singular marker (S1) used in oblique and derived forms, forms a minimal pair with the morpheme ᄃᄃ *ká* (P1), the corresponding first person plural marker. These morphemes should not be confused with the locative suffix ᄃᄃ *ká* (LOC), or with the word ᄃᄃ *ka* ~ ᄃᄃ *kâ*, meaning ‘hand’, which is taken to be a shortened form of ᄃᄃᄃᄃ *ʔáka* ~ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ *ʔákâ* ‘hand’. The first person plural marker ᄃᄃ *ká* (P1)

may be followed by a numeral to indicate the specific number of people included in the activity mentioned.

41 $\epsilon(\text{ㄨㄛ}) \text{ ㄗㄨㄛ} \text{ ㄗㄨㄛ} \text{ ㄗㄨㄛ} \text{ ㄗㄨㄛ}$
ká-sám-nun ʔyók ʔáre zúk-nu lel-ká
 P1-three-ABL work this make-ABL complete-LOC
 ‘Let us three get this job over and done with.’

42 $\text{ㄏㄛ} \text{ ㄙㄞㄨ} \text{ ㄜ} \text{ ㄗㄨㄛ}$
hó saróng shú zúk-hát
 2S today what make-PRF
 ‘What have you done today?’

43 $\text{ㄏ} \text{ ㄗㄞㄨㄛ}$
hu ma-nóng-ne
 3S NEG-go-NEG
 ‘He didn’t go.’
 ‘He isn’t going.’
 ‘He won’t go.’

Singular possessive pronouns are formed by suffixing the genitive marker ㄙ -*sá* (GEN) to the oblique forms of the singular pronouns listed in Diagram 13. The oblique forms listed in Diagram 13 are also used with the dative suffix, e.g. Section 4.9.

1st person	2nd person	3rd person
$\epsilon(\text{ㄨ})$ <i>kasu</i>	$\text{ㄗ}(\text{ㄨ})$ <i>ʔádo</i>	$\text{ㄏ}(\text{ㄨ})$ <i>hudo</i>
‘1S.OBL’	‘2S.OBL’	‘3S.OBL’

Diagram 13: Singular oblique pronouns

The meaning of the element ㄙ *su* in the first person singular oblique pronoun is as yet unclear. In everyday conversations, the first person singular marker ϵ *ka* (S1) may be directly followed by the genitive suffix, as in $\epsilon(\text{ㄨ}) \text{ ㄗ}(\text{ㄨ}) \text{ ㄗㄞㄨ} \text{ ㄗㄞㄨ} \text{ ㄗㄞㄨ}$ *kasá ʔábryáng* ‘my name’. In the second and third person singular oblique pronouns we recognise the

element (ʔ *do* ‘self’, which accentuates the identity of the referent denoted by the constituent to which it is suffixed, in the sense of ‘this very one, by himself, on his own, of his own accord’, viz. ʔʔ (ʔ *maródo* ‘the man himself’, ʔʔ (ʔ *tado* ‘oneself’, (ʔʔ (ʔ *dodosá* ‘personal, of one’s own’.

44 ʔʔ (ʔ (ʔ (ʔ (ʔ
kasu-sá ʔábryáng
 1S.OBL-GEN name
 ‘my name’

45 ʔʔ (ʔ (ʔ (ʔ (ʔ
ʔádo-sá lí
 2S.OBL-GEN house
 ‘your house’

Dual and plural possessive pronouns are formed by suffixing the genitive marker to the dual and plural personal pronouns, viz. ʔʔʔʔ (ʔ *kányísá*, ʔʔʔʔ (ʔ *káyúsá*, ʔʔʔʔ (ʔ *ʔányísá*, ʔʔʔʔ (ʔ *ʔáyúsá*, ʔʔʔʔ (ʔ *hunyísá*, ʔʔʔʔ (ʔ *huyúsá*. Further usage of the genitive marker (ʔ -*sá* is discussed below in Section 4.6.

46 ʔʔʔʔ (ʔ (ʔ
káyú-sá *kyóng*
 1P-GEN village
 ‘our village’

4.3.2 Demonstrative pronouns

The Lepcha demonstrative pronouns ʔʔ *ʔáre* ‘this’ and ʔʔ *ʔore* ‘that’ and the interrogative pronoun ʔʔ *sare* ‘what’ are morphologically transparent in the sense that they appear to consist of the element ʔ *-re*, cognate with the definite article, combined with one of the following deictic elements: the proximal morpheme ʔʔ *ʔá-*, the distal morpheme ʔʔ *ʔo-* or the interrogative morpheme ʔʔ *sa-*. The proximal and distal morphemes refer to a location relative to that of the speaker. Some speakers use the proximal deictic morpheme as a

nominal head in itself, e.g. ʒ(ᵛ) ʒásá ‘with this’. The proximal element ʒ ʒá- could conceivably be etymologically related to the pronominal root found in the second person pronouns ʒ(ᵛ) ʒádo, ʒ(ʃ) ʒányí and ʒ(ɛ) ʒáyú.

In the following list of demonstratives, in which we find not only demonstrative pronouns but also adverbs, we see the proximal element ʒ ʒá- prefixed to other morphemes that refer to a location relative to the speaker.

ʒ(ᵛ)	ʒátháng	‘this up there (to or at any point that is considered higher)’
ʒ(ᵛ)	ʒáthú	‘this up over there, this up above there’
ʒ(ᵛ)	ʒábá	‘this here’
ʒ(ʃ)	ʒábi	‘this right here’
ʒ(ʃ)	ʒáfi	‘this just here, this nearby here, this in this direction, this to or towards here’
ʒ(ᵛ)	ʒáthól	(adj.) ‘very near, very close’
ʒ(ᵛ)	ʒápun	(adj.) ‘near, close’
ʒ(ᵛ)	ʒálem	‘in this direction, hither’
ʒ(ᵛ)	ʒálon	‘in this direction’
ʒ(ᵛ)	ʒálol	‘this way, in this direction’
ʒ(ɛ)	ʒáchú	‘this down here, this down below, this lower down’
ʒ(ʃ)	ʒácún	‘below, lower down, beneath’

Many of these demonstratives have counterparts formed with the distal morpheme ʒ ʒo-.

ʒ(ᵛ)	ʒotháng	‘that up there’
ʒ(ᵛ)	ʒothú	‘that up over there’
ʒ(ɛ)	ʒochú	‘that down here’

In some demonstratives we recognise a noun indicating a location, such as ʒ(ʃ) ʒín ‘the other side, the opposite side’, and ʒ(ᵛ) ʒon ‘side’.

ʒ(ʃ)	ʒápín	‘this on the other side’
ʒ(ʃ)	ʒopín	‘that on the other side’
ʒ(ᵛ)	ʒábon	‘on this side’
ʒ(ᵛ)	ʒobon	‘on that side’

ཇའོ་ཇའོ་ ཇའཔེན་ ཇའཔོན་ ‘on both sides, here and there’

Three other deictic elements commonly encountered are ཇ་ *pe-*, also spelt ཇཏྲ་ *pí-*, ‘over there’, ཇ་ *me-* ‘down there’, and ཇའ་ *tá-*, also spelt ཇའ་ *ta-*, ‘up there’. These elements may also be prefixed to the article ཇ་ *re*, viz. ཇའ་ ཇ་ *pere* ‘that over there’, also spelt ཇཏྲ་ ཇ་ *pír*, ཇཏྲ་ ཇ་ *pyir*, ཇའ་ ཇ་ *pyur*; ཇའ་ ཇ་ *mere* ‘that down there’; ཇའ་ ཇ་ *táre* ‘that up there’, or to other deictic elements mentioned above, such as ཇའ་ ཇ་ *petet* ‘up to that place over there’, ཇའ་ ཇ་ *pefi* ‘there (near)’, ཇའ་ ཇ་ *pelom* ‘in that manner’, ཇའ་ ཇ་ *mebí* ‘there below’ (less distant than ཇའ་ ཇ་ *mebá*), ཇའ་ ཇ་ *mebá* ‘there below’, ཇའ་ ཇ་ *melom* ‘like that down there’, ཇའ་ ཇ་ *melon* ‘in that direction down there’, ཇའ་ ཇ་ *tabá* ‘above there, up there’, ཇའ་ ཇ་ *tarere* ‘the one there above’, ཇའ་ ཇ་ *talem kón* ‘above there, in that direction’, ཇའ་ ཇ་ *talom* ‘as it is there above’, combined with each other, e.g. ཇའ་ ཇ་ *peme* ‘there, down there’, or reduplicated ཇའ་ ཇ་ *pepe* ‘that there, yonder’.

All the deictic elements introduced thus far form part of many demonstratives and their corresponding interrogatives in Lepcha, as for example in the pair ཇའ་ ཇ་ *tothá* ‘then, at that time’, ཇའ་ ཇ་ *sathá* ‘when, at what time’. The demonstratives encode notions such as whether or not an indicated or implied referent is close to the deictic center, whether the referent is at a higher or lower elevation, moving toward or away from the deictic center. Some common demonstratives are listed below in order to illustrate this phenomenon. In the first set of examples, all the demonstratives and the corresponding interrogative contain the element ཇ་ *-bá*, indicating a location relative to the speaker.

ཇའ་ ཇ་	<i>ṭábá</i>	‘here’
ཇའ་ ཇ་	<i>ṭobá</i>	‘there’
ཇའ་ ཇ་	<i>pebá</i>	‘there’
ཇའ་ ཇ་	<i>mebá</i>	‘there below’
ཇའ་ ཇ་	<i>tábá</i>	‘there above’
ཇའ་ ཇ་	<i>sabá</i>	‘where’

The following pronouns of manner contain the element (Ḷ ~ Ḷ) *lóm* ~ *lom*, ‘road, path’.

Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>ʔálom</i>	‘like this’
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>ʔolom</i>	‘like that’
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>pelom</i>	‘like that’
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>melom</i>	‘like that down there’
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>táalom</i>	‘like that there above’
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>salom</i>	‘how, like what’
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>salomlá</i>	‘anyhow, anyway’

The element Ḷ-*lem*, expresses the meaning ‘towards, in the direction of’, is found in the following demonstratives.

Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>ʔálem</i>	‘in this direction, hither’
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>ʔolem</i>	‘in that direction, thither’
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>salem</i>	‘in what direction, whither, where’
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>tálem kón</i>	‘in the direction there above’

The element (Ḷ) *lol* ‘bend’ which forms part of a set of demonstratives is also used as a verb meaning ‘bend, bend onwards, turn or incline in a forward direction, be directed’.

Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>ʔálol</i>	‘this way, in this direction’
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>ʔolol</i>	‘that way, in that direction’
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>salol</i>	‘which way, in which direction, whither’
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>talol</i>	‘up above there’

In the following examples the morpheme (Ḷ) *-lon* ‘in this direction’ is found.

Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>ʔálon</i>	in this direction
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>ʔolon</i>	in that direction
Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>talon kón</i>	in the direction there above

The morpheme Ḷ *tet*, also spelt Ḷ *tyet* and Ḷ *tyat*, expresses the meaning ‘until, up to’.

Ḷ(Ḷ)	<i>ʔátet</i>	‘this much, this many’
------	--------------	------------------------

ᄃᄃᄃ	<i>ʔotet</i>	‘that much, this many’
ᄃᄃᄃ	<i>satet</i>	‘how much, how many’
ᄃᄃᄃ	<i>petet</i>	‘up to that place over there’

The morpheme \tilde{z} *tet* is used as an approximative suffix with nominals and verbs, indicating a limit or boundary, a continuation or extension as far or as much as specified, e.g. ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ *satet khut tet* ‘as much as possible’. When used with verbs, the morpheme \tilde{z} *tet* is suffixed to the verb to express a limiting event with respect to the situation expressed by the main verb. Occasionally the element \tilde{z} *tet* also occurs as a verb meaning ‘touch, aim’.

47	ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ			
	<i>gun-len</i>	<i>ʔátim-nu</i>	<i>gun-len</i>	<i>ʔácum-tet</i>
	all-than	big-ABL	all-than	small-until
	‘from the greatest of all to the smallest’			

48	ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ			
	<i>hu</i>	<i>satet</i>	<i>zúk-tet</i>	<i>go-lá zúk-sho</i>
	3S	how.much	make-until	1S-also make-NPR
	‘I will also do as much as he has done.’			

4.3.3 Interrogative and relative pronouns

Many interrogative pronouns contain the element ω *sa-*. In addition to these pronouns Lepcha uses the pronouns ᄃᄃ *shú* ‘what’ and ᄃᄃ *tú* ‘who’. Occasionally, as in (51), interrogative pronouns are reduplicated. The pronoun ᄃᄃ *sare* ‘which’ is used with both human and non-human referents, whereas ᄃᄃ *tú* ‘who’ is only used with human referents. Some interrogative pronouns are also used as relative pronouns, like ᄃᄃ *sare* ‘which’ in example (53). The notion ‘why?’ is expressed by the expression ᄃᄃᄃᄃ *shúmátne* ‘why’, sometimes spelt ᄃᄃᄃᄃ *shúmátnu*. Questions containing an interrogative pronoun are sometimes facultatively marked by the clause-final interrogative particle ᄃᄃ *gó* (Q). Yes/no questions are not marked by the interrogative particle.

- 49 རྒྱལ་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
ṗádo-sá tyól tú gó
 2S.OBL-GEN friend who Q
 ‘Who is your friend?’
- 50 རྒྱལ་ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
ṗáyú-m tú-nu lík-bám gó
 2P.OBL-DAT who-ABL call-PRG Q
 ‘Who is calling you?’
- 51 ལོ་ ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
go cálong-do shú-shú zúk gát
 1S now-self what-what do must
 ‘What should I do now?’
- 52 རྒྱལ་ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་ལོ་
ṗáre-zang shúmú-dep-re ṗádyút shúmátne
 this-like man-with-DEF fight why
- ལོ་ ལོ་
dóng-shang gó
 search-INF Q
 ‘Why are you picking a fight with a guy like him?’
- 53 ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་ལོ་
zónggú-re sukdam-sá ṗáre-zang lyáng-kát
 Dzongú-DEF world-GEN this-like land-one
- ལོ་ ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་
gum sare-ká-re sabá-re róng
 be.AST which-LOC-DEF where-DEF Lepcha
- ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་
ṗágít thop-sho
 tribe get-NPR
 ‘Dzongú is one of those places on earth in which, where, we can find Lepcha people.’

Notions such as ‘everywhere’ and ‘everyone’ are expressed in Lepcha by using interrogative pronouns reinforced with the morpheme ལ་ *lá* ‘also’, e.g. ལ་ལ་ *sabá lá* ‘everywhere’, ལ་ལ་ *shú lá* ‘everything, whatever’, ལ་ལ་ *sathá lá* ‘always’, ལ་ལ་ *tú lá* ‘everyone, someone, anyone, whoever’. When these are combined with a negative verb they convey the senses ‘nowhere’, ‘no one’, etc, e.g. (55). The pronoun ལ་ *tú* ‘who’ is also found reinforced with ལ་ *do* ‘self’, viz. ལ་ལ་ *tú do* ‘any person, anybody, anyone’.

54 ལ་ ལ་ལ་ ལ་
hó sathá lá ma-yâ-n
 2S always NEG-know-NEG

ལ་ལ་ ལ་ ལ་
shú lá ma-yâ-n li-sho
 everything NEG-know-NEG say-NPR

‘You’re always saying: I don’t know, I don’t know anything.’

55 ལ་ ལ་ལ་ ལ་
go-nu shú lá ma-mát-ne
 1S-ABL everything NEG-do-NEG

‘I didn’t do anything.’

56 ལ་ ལ་ ལ་
ʔábi ʔân sabá lá
 here and everywhere

‘here and everywhere’

4.3.4 Indefinite pronouns

Common indefinite pronouns referring to unspecified persons or things are ལ་ *rel* ‘each’, ལ་ *ʔáflík* ‘some’, ལ་ *gun* ‘all, every’, ལ་ *tyâng* ‘whole, all’, ལ་ *kumdúng* ‘other’, ལ་ *rangsâ* ~ ལ་ *rangsâr* ‘other’, ལ་ *jen* ‘other’.

The adjective ལ་ *rangsâ* ~ ལ་ *rangsâr*, sometimes spelt ལ་ *rangsó* ~ ལ་ *rangsór* or ལ་ *rungsó* ~ ལ་ *rungsór*, expresses the

meaning ‘another, second, different’ in the sense of ‘a second one’, ‘one more’, but also in the sense of ‘a different one from the one at hand’. The adjective རྩམ་པོ་ *ʔásâr* is taken to be a short form of རྩམ་པོ་ *rangsâ* ~ རྩམ་པོ་ *rangsâr*. The adjective ཇོ་ *jen* ‘other, another, different, additional’ might be a loan from Dzongkha or Dränjoke ཇེན་མི་ *zhenmi* or ཇེན་ *zhen* ‘other’, although the Lepcha and Dränjoke meanings cannot be simply equated. In older texts, we find the form ཇོ་ཇོ་ *jemen* ‘other, another, different, additional’, which is taken to be an older form of ཇོ་ *jen*. The etymological relationship between the forms ཇོ་ *jen* and ཇོ་ཇོ་ *jemen* and the Dzongkha and Dränjoke forms is as yet unclear. The adjective ཇོ་ *jen* ‘other, another, different, additional’ is used in much the same way as རྩམ་པོ་ *rangsâ*, e.g. ཇོ་ལུ་ *jen sung* ‘another story’ in example (31) of this chapter, or ཇོ་ཕོ་ལྷ་ཇོ་ *jen thámpang dep* [other object with] ‘with other objects’. The form ཇོ་ *jen* ‘other, another, different, additional’ is also used as what could be called a true indefinite pronoun, i.e. used independently as a pronominal head, which can be directly followed by suffixes and/or a definite article, e.g. ཇོ་ལོ་ལྷ་ཇོ་ *jen–sang–nu* [other–PL.H–ABL] ‘by others’.

57 ཇོ་ཕོ་ལྷ་ཇོ་ལོ་ལྷ་ཇོ་ལོ་ལྷ་ཇོ་
jen mung–pang lá gun ro–nu nóng ma
 other devil–PL.NH also all fear–ABL go AST
 ‘All the other devils were also afraid and left.’

58 རྩམ་པོ་ལྷ་ཇོ་ལོ་ལྷ་ཇོ་ལོ་ལྷ་ཇོ་
róng lí–kát nyí gang
 Lepcha house–one be if
 རྩམ་པོ་ རྩམ་པོ་ལྷ་ཇོ་ རྩམ་པོ་ལྷ་ཇོ་
rungsâr ʔágít–sá lí ʔágyáp nyí–sho
 other tribe–GEN house much be–NPR
 ‘If there is one Lepcha house there, there will be many more houses of other tribes.’

The meaning expressed by the adjective ཇོ་ཇོ་ *kumdúng* is ‘other, different, strange, foreign, alien’, in the sense of ‘someone or something that does not resemble the person or thing referred to’. The noun ཇོ་ཇོ་ *maró* ‘man, person’ may also be used to express the notions ‘someone, someone else, anyone, whoever, another person’, e.g. (60).

When the noun ገጽ *maró* is reinforced with ቁ *do* ‘self’, this yields the meaning ‘the man himself’, as in ገጽ ቁ ጎጆ (*maródo zúkbám* [man-self make-PRG] ‘the man is doing it himself’).

- 59 ጎ ጅቁን ገጽን ዳ ገጽ
pe *kumdúng* *maró-re* *tú* *gó*
 over.there other man-DEF who Q
 ‘Who is that strange man?’

- 60 ጎጆ ቁ ገጽ ለ ጎ ገጽ ለገጽ
ጎጆ-do *ma-mát* *le* *maró* *thyo-sho*
 that-self NEG-do REQ man hear-NPR
 ‘Please don’t do that. People will hear.’

In example (61), we see the adjective ጎ *jen* ‘other, another’, the noun ገጽ *maró* ‘man, person’, the adjective ጅቁን *kumdúng* ‘different, strange’ and the plural suffix ል -*sang*, all grouped together in one phrase.

- 61 ጎ ገጽ ጅቁን ል
jen *maró* *kumdúng-sang-re*
 other man different-PL.H-DEF
- ጎጎ ቁ ለ ገጽ
ጎጎ-do *lát* *ma-kón*
 here-self return NEG-allow
 ‘Other people, outsiders, they were not allowed to come here.’

The adjective ጎጎ *ጎጎ* *ጎጎ* ‘some’, referring to either persons or things, is derived from the verb ጎጎ *flí* ~ ጎጎ *flím* ‘divide, separate’, from which the adverb ጎጎ *flík* ‘apart, aside’ is also derived. The form ጎጎ *káflík* ‘some’ is also found, albeit less frequently.

- 62 ጎጎ ጎ ጎጎ
ጎጎጎጎ-re-m *ma-bi-n*
 some-DEF-DAT NEG-give-NEG

‘Some people were not given any.’

The form $\hat{r}el$ occurs as a noun expressing the meaning ‘piece’ and as an adverb in the sense ‘separate, separately, respectively’. As a main verb $\hat{r}el$ expresses the meaning ‘separate maize from the cob’. The form $\hat{r}el$ is also used as an indefinite pronoun expressing the meaning ‘each’. More often than not the reduplicated form is used, expressing the meanings ‘one by one, one after the other, each one individually’.

63 $\text{ɸjɛ́} \hat{r} \hat{r} \text{ } \text{ʂo}$
huyú-m rel-rel bi
 3P-DAT each-each give

‘Give one to each of them.’

For the concepts ‘all’, ‘every’ and ‘whole’, the words gun and tyâng are used. In order to grasp the difference between gun ‘all, every’ and tyâng ‘all, whole’, it is important to realise that when gun ‘all, every’ is used, everybody or everything that is referred to is seen as an individual person or item, whereas when tyâng is used a reference is made to the whole or the entirety of a group of things or people.

64 $\text{ʒ}(\text{ó}(\text{ó} \text{ } \text{ʂ} \text{ } \text{gun} \text{ } \text{ʒ}(\text{ʒ} \text{ } \text{ʒ} \text{ } \text{nyí}$
ʒábá-sá lí gun ʒázuk-ʒázuk nyí
 here-GEN house all pretty-pretty be

‘All the houses here are very nice.’

4.4 The ablative suffix

The invariant meaning of the ablative suffix $\hat{r} \sim \text{ny} -nun \sim -nu$ is source or cause. Lepcha $\hat{r} \sim \text{ny} -nun \sim -nu$ is cognate with the Limbu comitative suffix $-nu$ ‘with, from’, which also fulfils an ablative function. Lepcha $\hat{r} \sim \text{ny} -nun \sim -nu$ is suffixed to nominals, verbs or clauses and the apparently different types of meaning which the morpheme $\hat{r} \sim \text{ny} -nun \sim -nu$ expresses in these combinations are a function of the difference in the syntactic status of the constituent to which the morpheme is attached.

There are native speakers and Lepcha authors who consistently use the form ལྷོ་ *-nun* after nouns and the form ལྷོ་ *-nu* after verbs. This is generally regarded as proper or correct usage. However, this is clearly a cultivated norm because in practice most speakers and writers do not observe any distinction. This is just one facet of a wider sociolinguistic phenomenon in Lepcha, for in Lepcha textbooks norms of speech are often prescribed which deviate from the actual norms observed in natural speech. In the examples which I adduce below, the two allomorphs ལྷོ་ *-nun* and ལྷོ་ *-nu* are used seemingly at random. Two general tendencies can be observed. One is the tendency to use the form ལྷོ་ *-nun* more frequently in combination with nouns and the form ལྷོ་ *-nu* more frequently with verbs, an artificial tendency which, as already pointed out, is not observed consistently. A second tendency is to use the form ལྷོ་ *-nun* in the sense of ‘by, through’, whereas the abbreviated form ལྷོ་ *-nu* more often occurs in the sense of ‘from, since’, but here too there is little consistency. The situation therefore appears to be in flux, and widespread bilingualism may have exacerbated the confusion because in certain areas fluent monolingual speakers of Lepcha are in the minority.

One sense which the suffix ལྷོ་ ~ ལྷོ་ *-nun ~ -nu* expresses when affixed to nouns and adverbs denoting a place or time is the ablative, viz. to mark the source, origin or point of departure for the activity denoted by the main verb. In such contexts the ending is comparable in function to English ‘from’.

- 65 རལྱའི་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་
ʔábi-nu shúlá ma-shí-n
 here-ABL everything NEG-see-NEG
 ‘From here I cannot see anything.’

- 66 ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་
go kóm ʔore sabá-nu thop te
 1S money that where-ABL get DUB
 ‘Where would I get that kind of money from?’

- 67 ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་
saróng-nu go cholí-ká nóng-sho
 today-ABL 1S school-LOC go-NPR

‘As of today, I shall go to school.’

- 68 གཞུ་ལཱ་
ʔálut-nu
 heart-ABL
 ‘from the bottom of my heart’
- 69 ཨོ་སའ་ལཱ་
hó sabá-nu
 2S where-ABL
 ‘Where are you from?’
 ‘Where do you come from?’
 ‘Where did you come from?’
- 70 ཨ་ཨོ་ལཱ་ལཱ་ ཨོ་ཨོ་ལཱ་
dárjúlyáng-nun kálenpúng-tet
 Darjeeling-ABL Kalimpong-until
 ‘from Darjeeling to Kalimpong’
- 71 གཞུ་ལཱ་ གཞུ་ལཱ་
ʔáthyák-nu ʔáti-tet
 head-ABL sole-until
 ‘from head to toe’

The Lepcha ablative suffix ལཱ་ ~ ལཱ་ -*nun* ~ -*nu* can be affixed to nominals to express an agent, which in some other languages such as Limbu or Kulung would be termed ergative or instrumental. For a further discussion of the meaning and function of the ablative suffix, the reader is referred to Section 5.13 below.

4.5 The lative suffix

In its ablative sense, the Lepcha ablative suffix ལཱ་ ~ ལཱ་ -*nun* ~ -*nu* contrasts with the Lepcha lative suffix ལོམ་ -*lóm* ‘via, through’. The lative suffix indicates via which or through which motion a location is reached. Whereas the Limbu root -*lam* occurs both as a noun meaning ‘road, way’ and as a mediative suffix meaning ‘via, from’, the Lepcha

root ལོམ་ *-lóm* occurs as the lative suffix, as a noun in the meaning ‘road, way’ and as a verb in the meaning ‘walk’. Both the Lepcha and the Limbu forms reflect the Tibeto-Burman root **lam* ‘road, direction’. As examples (72) and (73) show, the Lepcha ablative suffix ལྷ་ ~ ལྷ་ *-nun* ~ *-nu* and the lative suffix ལོམ་ *-lóm* ‘via’ are closely related in function but distinct in meaning. Whereas in example (72) Lepcha ལོམ་ *-lóm* suggests a particular direction or pathway, in sentence (73) only the point of origin is suggested by ལྷ་ ~ ལྷ་ *-nun* ~ *-nu*. In sentences (74)-(77), we see more examples of the suffix ལོམ་ *-lóm* ‘via’.

- 72 ལོམ་ ལྷ་ལྷ་ལོམ་ མི་
go prolyáng-lóm thi
 1S Bhutan-via reach
 ‘I arrived by way of Bhutan.’
- 73 ལོམ་ ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ མི་
go prolyáng-nu thi
 1S Bhutan-ABL reach
 ‘I arrived from Bhutan.’
- 74 ལྷ་ལོམ་ ལྷ་ལོམ་ ལྷ་ལོམ་ ལྷ་ལོམ་
kúng-lóm kúng-kóng glet-nón ma
 tree-via tree-branch drop-RES AST
 ‘Branches fell down from the tree.’
- 75 ལྷ་ལོམ་ ལྷ་ལོམ་ ལྷ་ལོམ་ ལྷ་ལོམ་
hu lí-lóm plâ yet-nón ma
 3S house-via come.out descend-RES AST
 ‘He came out of his house and went down.’
- 76 ལོམ་ ལོམ་ ལོམ་ ལོམ་
ʔádo-lóm go kóm-kám thop-sho
 2S.OBL-via 1S money-little.bit get-NPR
 ‘I’ll get some money through you.’

- 77 བུ་མེ་ལོ་གཞུག་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་
hu mák myóng shumyú-sang-lóm go thyo
 3S die experience person-PL.H-via 1S hear
 ‘I heard from these people that he died.’

There are a number of Lepcha suffixes which are similar in meaning but distinct from both the ablative and the lative suffixes. One of these is the Lepcha suffix ལོ་-*ren* ‘since’. Whereas ལོ་-*ren* ‘since’ has a straightforward temporal meaning ‘since’, e.g. (78), the use of the ablative suffix ལོ་ ~ ལོ་-*nun* ~ -*nu* implies a cause, a change of heart or some similar implication because of its meaning denoting origin, e.g. (79).

- 78 ལོ་
tasó-ren
 yesterday-since
 ‘since yesterday’

- 79 ལོ་
tasó-nu
 yesterday-ABL
 ‘since yesterday, from yesterday on’

Another such suffix is the Lepcha ending ལོ་-*kón* ‘side, towards, in the direction’. This Lepcha morpheme to some extent resembles the frequent usage of the suffix -*paṭṭī* ‘side’ in some varieties of colloquial eastern Nepali and, for that matter, the use of the English postposition ‘side’ in Bhutanese and Lepcha English, e.g. ‘He went Darjeeling side’, i.e. ‘He went to/towards Darjeeling’. As a noun, Lepcha ལོ་-*kón* translates into English as ‘side’.

- 80 ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
hó ka-sá kón tyúk
 2S S1-GEN side kick
 ‘You kicked it towards me.’

- 81 ༎ྲྀླྀ ༎
nóng-kón tho
 inside-side put
 ‘Put it inside.’
- 82 ༎ ༎ྲྀླྀླྀ ༎ྲྀླྀ ༎ྲྀླྀ
go prolyáng-kón nóng-sho
 1S Bhutan-side go-NPR
 ‘I am going in the direction of Bhutan.’
- 83 ༎ ༎ྲྀླྀླྀ ༎ྲྀླྀ
go prolyáng-ká nóng-sho
 1S Bhutan-LOC go-NPR
 ‘I am going to Bhutan.’

4.6 *The genitive and comitative suffixes*

The Lepcha suffix ༎ (-*sá* (GEN)) expresses possession, part-whole relationships and related semantic functions.

- 84 ༎ྲྀ ༎ྲྀླྀླྀ ༎ྲྀ ༎ྲྀ
ʔáre kasu-sá lí go ma
 this 1S.OBL-GEN house be AST
 ‘This is my house.’
- 85 ༎ྲྀླྀླྀ ༎ྲྀླྀ ༎ྲྀླྀ ༎ྲྀླྀ
kasu-sá ʔákâ nyet nyí ma
 1S.OBL-GEN hand two be AST
 ‘I have two hands.’
- 86 ༎ྲྀླྀླྀ ༎ྲྀླྀ ༎ྲྀླྀ ༎ྲྀླྀ
kasu-sá ʔákup nyet nyí ma
 1s.OBL-GEN child two be AST
 ‘I have two children.’

87 ལཱ་སྤྱོད་སྤྱོད་
kúng-sá *ṛún*
 tree-GEN horse
 ‘a wooden horse’

88 རྩོམ་སྤྱོད་
fát-sá *fátyók*
 earth-GEN pot
 ‘an earthen pot’

The Lepcha comitative suffix ལཱ་ ~ ལཱ་ -*sá* ~ -*sa* ‘with’ is partially homophonous with the genitive suffix ལཱ་ -*sá*. Usage of the genitive suffix ལཱ་ -*sá* is straightforward and ubiquitous in the language, but the usage of the comitative suffix requires some discussion and must be contrasted with the instrumental function of the Lepcha ablative suffix ལྷོ་ ~ ལྷོ་ -*nun* ~ -*nu*. The comitative suffix can be used to indicate the instrument or means by which an action is enacted or takes place.

89 ལཱ་ ལྷོ་སྤྱོད་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
go *ṛúng-sá* *ṛákâ* *cóng-sho*
 1S water-with hand wash-NPR
 ‘I wash my hands with water.’

90 ལཱ་ ལྷོ་སྤྱོད་ ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་
go *nyúgú-sá* *pi-sho*
 1S pen-with write-NPR
 ‘I write with a pen.’

91 ལྷོ་སྤྱོད་ ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་
phyokmú-sá *lí* *phyok*
 broom-with house sweep
 ‘Sweep the house with the broomstick.’

92 ལྷོ་སྤྱོད་ ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་
ryúm-sá *dum* *hráp*
 needle-with cloth sew
 ‘Sew cloth with a needle.’

Whereas the suffix $\text{᳚} \sim \text{᳚} -nun \sim -nu$ marks the agent performing an action, the Lepcha comitative suffix $\text{᳚} \sim \text{᳚} -sá \sim -sa$ marks the implement with which the situation is enacted, e.g. (93)-(96). The situation in Lepcha is markedly different from that in Limbu, where the Limbu comitative suffix $\text{᳚} \sim \text{᳚} -nun \sim -nu$ fulfils both comitative and ablative functions. In Lepcha, the suffix $\text{᳚} \sim \text{᳚} -nun \sim -nu$ denotes origin, whereas the suffix $\text{᳚} \sim \text{᳚} -sá \sim -sa$ denotes belonging and expresses the comitative sense ‘with’. The comitative suffix $\text{᳚} \sim \text{᳚} -sá \sim -sa$ is especially used when the referent of the constituent it modifies is the obvious choice of means by which to enact the situation denoted by the main verb, i.e. when the activity denoted by the verb, in a manner of speaking, belongs to the implement. It is via the sense of belonging that an etymological relationship with the nearly homophonous Lepcha genitive suffix becomes plausible. However, note that in examples (93) through (95), the ablative suffix $\text{᳚} \sim \text{᳚} -nun \sim -nu$ could be used instead of Lepcha $\text{᳚} \sim \text{᳚} -sá \sim -sa$, whereas in sentence (96) the use of $\text{᳚} \sim \text{᳚} -nun \sim -nu$ would yield an awkward or less obvious reading. This is because the notion of origin, cause or source would yield suitable applications in examples (93) through (95), but not in utterance (96), where the knife is merely an implement accompanying the action.

- 93 $\text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚}$
go *᳚ámík-sá* *ngâk-bám*
 1S eye-with look-PRG
 ‘I look with my eyes.’
- 94 $\text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚}$
go *᳚ányúr-sá* *nyen-bám*
 1S ear-with listen-PRG
 ‘I listen with my ears.’
- 95 $\text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚} \text{᳚}$
go *᳚ábong-sá* *jók-bám*
 1S mouth-with talk-PRG
 ‘I talk with my mouth.’

- 96 ལོ་འཕྲུལ་ལྟེ་བུ་
go bánkup-sá tyók-bám
 1S knife-with cut-PRG
 ‘I am cutting with a knife.’

In the following examples, both the Lepcha ablative suffix རྟེ་ལ་ ~ ལ་ -*nun* ~ -*nu* and the Lepcha comitative suffix ལཱ་ ~ ལ་ -*sá* ~ -*sa* are used. The difference in meaning is that in example (97) the pen is depicted as a means or point of origin and therefore highlighted as the means by which the writing takes place, whereas in example (98) the pen is merely mentioned as the obvious means with no special highlighting of its function as the implement.

- 97 རྟེ་ལ་ལྟེ་བུ་
nyúgú-nu shú zúk-sho
 pen-ABL what make-NPR
 ‘What do you use a pen for?’

- 98 ལཱ་ལྟེ་བུ་
nyúgú-sá shú zúk-sho
 pen-with what make-NPR
 ‘Why are you using a pen?’

The comitative suffix ལཱ་ ~ ལ་ -*sá* ~ -*sa* ‘with’, is also used with numerals, e.g. (99) and Section 3.12. Occasionally, the comitative suffix is also used to coordinate arguments, e.g. (100), (101), (102) and (104).

- 99 ལྷ་མེད་ལ་མེད་
khá-kát sa kát
 score-one with one
 ‘twenty one’

- 100 རྩལ་ལྟེ་བུ་ལ་འགྲོ་བའི་མེད་པའི་
phyuk-bú sa jen-bú ma-flí-ne
 be.rich-FCT with other-FCT NEG-separate-NEG
 ‘Don’t distinguish between the rich and the poor.’

- 101 ᓄᓐᓂᓐ ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐᓂᓐ ᓄᓐᓂᓐ
sathang sá sacák punzók
 tiger with leopard forest
- ᓄᓐᓂᓐᓂᓐ ᓄᓐ
thámcâng-pang gum
 animal-PL.NH be.AST
 ‘Tigers and leopards are animals of the jungle.’
- 102 ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ
hó sa go-re tyól ʔáryúm gum
 2S with 1S-DEF friend good be.AST
 ‘You and I are good friends.’
- The postposition ᓄᓐ *dep* ‘together, along with’ is often used in combination with or as an alternant to the comitative suffix $\text{ᓄᓐ} \sim \text{ᓄᓐ} \text{-sá}$ ~ *-sa* ‘with’. The postposition ᓄᓐ *dep* ‘together’ indicates accompaniment.
- 103 ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ
hó hu-dep nóng
 2S 3S-together go
 ‘You go with him.’
- 104 ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ
rúbá sa ngú ʔúng-ká dep bám
 tortoise with fish water-LOC together dwell
 ‘The tortoise and the fish live together in the water.’
- 105 ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ ᓄᓐ
ka-dep nóng-ká le
 S1-together go-LOC REQ
 ‘Please go with me.’

- 106 ཨུ་ (ཨྱེལ་ རྩུ་) རྩུ་ལཱ་ རྩུ་ལཱ་
hu throm-ká muró-dep ma-nóng-ne
 3S market-LOC man-together NEG-go-NEG
 ‘He went to the market without anyone else.’

- 107 ཨུ་ ཨུ་ལཱ་ (ཨྱེལ་ རྩུ་)
hu hudo-sá tyól-dep
 3S 3S.OBL-GEN friend-together

 ལཱ་ལཱ་ལཱ་ ལཱ་
cálóng-do lát
 just.now-self return
 ‘He just came together with his friend.’

A verb that should be mentioned here is རྩུ་ *chó* ‘unite, join’. Tám-sáng lists the word རྩུ་ *nyíp* ‘together’, but no examples of this form have been attested (Tám-sáng 1980: 376).

- 108 ལཱ་ (ལཱ་ལཱ་) ལཱ་ལཱ་
go chó-nun nóng-ká
 1S join-ABL go-LOC
 ‘I’ll join you and then let’s go.’

4.7 The locative suffix

The invariant meaning of the Lepcha suffix ལཱ་ *-ká*, which I have expediently labelled ‘locative’, is one of ‘direction’, and the locative suffix may be attached to nominals, verbs and entire clauses. The invariant meaning of direction yields the notion of a supine when the locative suffix ལཱ་ *-ká* is affixed to a verb, e.g. (107), and produces an adhortative meaning when suffixed to an entire clause, e.g. (108). The latter uses of the locative suffix ལཱ་ *-ká* are treated in Section 5.12. When the locative morpheme ལཱ་ *-ká* is suffixed to a noun, it denotes the site of an activity or the destination towards which an activity is directed. The supine, adhortative and locative senses of the Lepcha locative morpheme ལཱ་ *-ká* are all functions of the same meaning, i.e. the goal toward which the action or situation is directed. The locative, supine and adhortative senses of the Lepcha locative category are

treated in separate sections of the grammar, but the same gloss (LOC) is used throughout the grammar in keeping with the analysis of this morpheme as indexing a single grammatical category with a uniform *Gesamtbedeutung* in all cases. Comparativists should keep in mind that the fact that the locative རྒྱལ་ -ká in its various functions synchronically represents a single grammatical category in modern Lepcha does not necessarily preclude that the three syntactically distinct uses of this morpheme may actually derive from historically distinct etyma through convergent evolution or analogy. The Dzongkha locative suffix ཁ་ *khar*, more usually pronounced *kha*, which particularly occurs in toponyms, might reflect the same etymon as Lepcha locative རྒྱལ་ -ká, but it is unclear at this point whether an etymological relationship obtains between the two.

- 109 འོ ལྷོ་རྒྱལ་ འོ་འོ་ འོ་
go lyem-ká nóng-det ma
 1S play-LOC go-move AST
 ‘I am going to play.’
- 110 རྒྱལ་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་
kányí dep theng-ká
 1D together sing-LOC
 ‘Come on, join us in singing.’
- 111 རྒྱལ་ རྒྱལ་ལྷོ་ རྒྱལ་ རྒྱལ་ རྒྱལ་
lí ?ákíng-ká ribiríp nyí ma
 house front-LOC ribi.plant be AST
 ‘There are *ribiplants* in front of the house.’

The Lepcha locative morpheme རྒྱལ་ -ká, when suffixed to a nominal constituent, can fulfil a regular locative function indicating the location, place or site of an activity or situation, e.g (112)-(113).

- 112 རྒྱལ་
lí-ká
 house-LOC
 ‘at home’

- 113 ལ་ཤཱ་པ་ རྩ་ཁྲིའི་ འོལེ
sáthang punzók-ká bám-sho
 tiger forest-LOC dwell-NPR
 ‘Tigers live in the jungle.’

The locative ending འི་ *-ká* can also express the destination or entity towards which an activity or situation is directed, e.g. (114)-(115). Example (112) can therefore be correctly translated into English ‘home’, in the sense of ‘homewards’ or ‘at home’, depending on which of the two meanings the speaker wishes to express.

- 114 ལ་ འི་ལཱ་ཤཱ་པ་ལ་ འོལེ
go kalenpúng-ká nóng-sho
 1S Kalimpong-LOC go-NPR
 ‘I am going to Kalimpong.’

When affixed to a nominal denoting an animate referent, as in the following example, Lepcha འི་ *-ká* can be contrasted with the Lepcha dative suffix ར་ *-m*, e.g. (115) vs. (116) and the discussion in Section 4.8.

- 115 ལ་ འི་ལྷ་ལ་ ར་ འི་ ལཱ་ཤཱ་པ་
go kaju-ká kám zo bi
 1S dog-LOC little.bit food give
 ‘I gave some food to the dog.’

- 116 ལ་ འི་ལྷ་ར་ ར་ འི་ ལཱ་ཤཱ་པ་
go kaju-re-m kám zo bi
 1S dog-DEF-DAT little.bit food give
 ‘I gave the dog some food.’

4.8 *The dative suffix*

The dative suffix ར་ *-m* (DAT) indicates the entity towards which the action or situation expressed by the verb is directed, but in a much more personal way than the locative suffix འི་ *-ká*. The meaning expressed by the locative suffix may be called ‘local, directional’, whereas the meaning expressed by the dative suffix may be called ‘af-

ected'. The Lepcha dative suffix marks what in many Western languages would be called the 'direct object' of a sentence. When an activity expressed by a verb is directed 'to' or 'for' someone or something, the goal is marked by the dative suffix མ -*m*. The dative suffix may mark the place to or towards which the motion is directed, or the person or thing to whom the action is directed, or for whom the action is intended. In other words, the verb expresses an activity that is targeted at an entity or object and the affected target or beneficiary of the activity or emotion is marked by the dative suffix.

- 117 འུ་ལུ་ རྒྱ་མཚོ་ རྩ་ རྩ་མཚོ་
hu-nu kasu-m rangsâr cho bi-sho
 3S-ABL 1S.OBL-DAT other book give-NPR
 'He'll give me the other book.'

- 118 རྒྱ་མཚོ་ རྩ་ མཚོ་
kasu-m-nu ?ore ma-yâ-n
 1S.OBL-DAT-ABL that NEG-know-NEG
 'I didn't know that.'

- 119 འུ་ལུ་ རྩ་མཚོ་ རྩ་ རྩ་མཚོ་
muró kányi-do-m shú sâkcíng-shang
 man 1D-self-DAT what think-INF
 'What will people think of the two of us?'

- 120 རྒྱ་མཚོ་ རྩ་
kasu-m dok-wám
 1S.OBL-DAT be.ill-PRG
 'I am feeling ill.'

A combination of the meanings of the dative suffix with the meaning of the locative suffix is not semantically plausible. Therefore, the dative suffix is not likely to be combined with the locative suffix. The meanings of the two suffixes can be contrasted as follows: When a referent is marked by the locative suffix, the action is directed towards the referent, which may be a person, place or thing. When a referent is marked by the dative suffix, we can say that the described action or state is more emphatically intended to affect the referent, or

that the referent is or would be affected in a more immediate way. We can see this illustrated in examples (121) through (128) below. For example, in (121) the general act is expressed of more or less accidentally coughing in someone’s face without meaning to do so. If the speaker had used $\text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ}$ *ʔámlem-re-m* [face-DEF-DAT], rather than $\text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ}$ *ʔámlem-ká* [face-LOC], it would have been clear that the act of coughing into someone’s face had been deliberate.

121 $\text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ}$
muró-sá ʔámlem-ká ma-hleng
 man-GEN face-LOC NEG-cough
 ‘Don’t cough into someone’s face.’

122 $\text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ}$
ka-sá hunyí-ká línshet shúlá ma-nyí-n
 S1-GEN 3D-LOC speech nothing NEG-be-NEG
 ‘I don’t have anything to say to them.’

123 $\text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ}$
hó kasu-m tyúk
 2S 1S.OBL-DAT kick
 ‘You kicked [it to] me.’

124 $\text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ}$
hó ka-sá kón-ká tyúk
 2S S1-GEN side-LOC kick
 ‘You kicked it in my direction.’

125 $\text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ}$
go-nun hu lyáng-ká yuk klóng
 1S-ABL 3S land-LOC letter send
 ‘I sent a letter to his place.’

126 $\text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ} \text{ } \text{ᄃᆞᆯᆫᆯᆫᆯ}$
ʔingngá-re-m buk
 child-DEF-DAT hit
 ‘Strike the child!’

- 127 བཟོ་ཅི།
fo-re-m tsám
 bird-DEF-DAT hold
 ‘Catch the bird!’
- 128 ཡེ་ཡེ་ཚུ་མེ་ཏོ་ལྟོ།
káyú-dó-m-re ma-bi-ne
 1P-self-DAT-DEF NEG-give-NEG
 ‘We were not given it.’

4.9 Adjectives

The Lepcha equivalent to an English adjective may be an adjective or a verb expressing a state or a condition. Many adjectives are formed from verbs by adding the prefix གལ་ *ʔá-* and sometimes suffixing མེ་ *-m* to the verb root, e.g. རྟུ་ *ryú* ‘be good’, གལ་རྟུ་ *ʔáryúm* ‘good’, as mentioned in Chapter 3. Some common adjectives are listed below.

མེ་ལྷོ།	<i>ʔáhyur</i>	‘red’
མེ་ལྷོ།	<i>ʔánók</i>	‘black’
མེ་ལྷོ།	<i>ʔádúm</i>	‘white’
མེ་ལྷོ།	<i>ʔácor</i>	‘sour’
མེ་ལྷོ།	<i>ʔázuk</i>	‘pretty’
མེ་ལྷོ།	<i>ʔáryúm</i>	‘good’
མེ་ལྷོ།	<i>ʔásúm</i>	‘spicy’
མེ་ལྷོ།	<i>ʔáklyam</i>	‘sweet’
མེ་ལྷོ།	<i>ʔáhyâng</i>	‘cold’
མེ་ལྷོ།	<i>ʔákyâng</i>	‘light, bright’

An adjective describes or specifies the properties or attributes of a noun. Adjectives used adnominally generally follow the noun they modify, e.g. ལོ་གློ་ལོ་ལོ་ *lóm ʔál* [road new] ‘the new road’, although the order may be reversed for emphasis.

- 129 གལ་མེ་ལྷོ་མེ་ལྷོ།
ʔúng ʔáhyâng ma-thóng
 water cold NEG-drink

‘Do not drink cold water.’

- 130 $\text{ʒ} \text{ɔ} \text{p} \text{ɔ} \text{p} \text{ɔ} \text{t} \text{--} \text{re} \quad \text{ʔ} \text{á} \text{k} \text{ly} \text{am} \quad \text{ny} \text{í}$
 peach-DEF sweet be
 ‘Peaches are sweet.’

Nouns are modified by adjectives, whereas adjectives may be modified by intensifiers, such as $\text{ʔ} \text{á} \text{g} \text{y} \text{á} \text{p}$ ‘much, very’, sometimes shortened to $\text{g} \text{y} \text{á} \text{p}$, and $\text{d} \text{o}$ ‘self’, or a combination of both as in (131) and (132).

- 131 $\text{ʔ} \text{á} \text{r} \text{e} \quad \text{t} \text{u} \text{k} \text{p} \text{ɔ} \text{p} \text{ɔ} \text{t} \quad \text{ʔ} \text{á} \text{g} \text{y} \text{á} \text{p} \text{--} \text{d} \text{o} \quad \text{k} \text{ly} \text{am} \text{--} \text{b} \text{á} \text{m}$
 this peach much-self be.sweet-PRG
 ‘This peach is very sweet.’

- 132 $\text{ʔ} \text{á} \text{r} \text{e} \text{--} \text{r} \text{e} \quad \text{g} \text{y} \text{á} \text{p} \text{--} \text{d} \text{o} \quad \text{ʔ} \text{á} \text{k} \text{h} \text{ú}$
 this-DEF much-self expensive
 ‘This is very expensive.’

4.10 Comparative and superlative constructions

A comparative construction is formed by means of the postposition $\text{l} \text{e} \text{n}$ ‘than, compared to’, which follows the element it modifies. In other words, the postposition $\text{l} \text{e} \text{n}$ ‘than’ is suffixed to the element with which the comparison is made.

- 133 $\text{p} \text{e} \text{m} \text{k} \text{ít} \quad \text{l} \text{e} \text{n} \quad \text{n} \text{u} \text{r} \text{k} \text{ít} \quad \text{ʔ} \text{á} \text{r} \text{y} \text{ú} \text{m} \quad \text{ny} \text{í}$
 Pemkít than Nurkít good be
 ‘Nurkít is better than Pemkít.’

- 134 $\text{ʔ} \text{á} \text{r} \text{e} \quad \text{k} \text{a} \text{j} \text{ú} \text{--} \text{r} \text{e} \quad \text{p} \text{e} \quad \text{l} \text{e} \text{n} \quad \text{c} \text{ó} \text{ng}$
 this dog-DEF over.there than be.quick

‘This dog is quicker than that one over there.’

A superlative meaning is expressed by comparison with a totality expressed by ལྷོ *gun* ‘all, every’.

- 135 ཇུ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ འཕྱི་ འོ་ ཅ
ʔore gun-len nahán nóng ma
 that all-than before go AST
 ‘He left before everyone else.’

- 136 ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ རྩོམ་ ལྷོ་
go gun-len tím-bú gum
 1S all-than big-FCT be.AST
 ‘I am the biggest one of all.’

A superlative meaning may also be expressed by suffixing རྩོམ་ *-chúk* ‘most, worthy’, or རྩོམ་ *-cho* ‘best, greatest’, to the root.

- 137 ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ རྩོམ་ ལྷོ་
hu muró tím-cho gum
 3S man big-most be.AST
 ‘He’s the biggest man of all.’

- 138 ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ རྩོམ་ ལྷོ་
hu muró tím-chúk gum
 3S man big-most be.AST
 ‘He is the biggest man.’

4.11 Numerals

The Lepcha numerals from zero through ten are as follows:

ཇེ	<i>ti</i>	‘zero’
ཇཱཱ	<i>kát</i>	‘one’
ཇཱཱཱ	<i>nyet</i>	‘two’
ཇཱཱཱཱ	<i>sám</i>	‘three’
ཇཱཱཱཱཱ	<i>fali</i>	‘four’

ᄃᄇ	<i>fangú</i>	‘five’
ᄃᄇ	<i>tarók</i>	‘six’
ᄃᄇᄃ	<i>kakyók</i>	‘seven’
ᄃᄇᄃ	<i>kaku</i>	‘eight’
ᄃᄇᄃᄃ	<i>kakyót</i>	‘nine’
ᄃᄇᄃ	<i>kati</i>	‘ten’

The numerals from eleven through nineteen are formed through suffixation of the morpheme ᄃᄃ -*tháp* to the numerals from one through nine. The numerals for the teens have both a full and an abbreviated form. The full forms are felt to be more formal and precise. The abbreviated numerals are formed by dropping the decimal numeral ᄃᄇᄃ *kati* ‘ten’.

<i>full form</i>		<i>short form</i>		
ᄃᄇᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kati kát tháp</i>	ᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kát tháp</i>	‘eleven’
ᄃᄇᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kati nyet tháp</i>	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>nyet tháp</i>	‘twelve’
ᄃᄇᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kati sám tháp</i>	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>sám tháp</i>	‘thirteen’
ᄃᄇᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kati fali tháp</i>	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>fali tháp</i>	‘fourteen’
ᄃᄇᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kati fangú tháp</i>	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>fangú tháp</i>	‘fifteen’
ᄃᄇᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kati tarók tháp</i>	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>tarók tháp</i>	‘sixteen’
ᄃᄇᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kati kakyók tháp</i>	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kakyók tháp</i>	‘seventeen’
ᄃᄇᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kati kaku tháp</i>	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kaku tháp</i>	‘eighteen’
ᄃᄇᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kati kakyót tháp</i>	ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>kakyót tháp</i>	‘nineteen’

Starting with the numeral for ‘twenty’, Lepcha makes use of a vigesimal numeral system based on ᄃᄃ *khá* ‘one score’, which would appear to be the same root as reflected in Dränjoke or Dzongkha ཁ་ཅི་ *khäci* ‘one score’, viz. ᄃᄃᄃᄃ *khá kát* [score-one] ‘twenty’, ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ *khá sám* [score-three] ‘sixty’. The coordinative conjunction ᄃᄃ ~ ᄃᄃ -*sá* ~ -*sa* ‘with’ is used to combine the vigesimal portion of the numeral with the lesser numeral.

ᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>khá kát</i>	‘twenty’
ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>khá kát sá kát</i>	‘twenty-one’
ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>khá kát sá nyet</i>	‘twenty-two’
ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>khá kát sá sám</i>	‘twenty-three’
ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ	<i>khá kát sá fali</i>	‘twenty-four’

𑄎𑄧𑄭𑄛𑄧	<i>khá kát sá fangú</i>	‘twenty-five’
𑄎𑄧𑄭𑄛𑄧𑄛	<i>khá kát sá tarók</i>	‘twenty-six’
𑄎𑄧𑄭𑄛𑄧𑄛𑄛	<i>khá kát sá kakyók</i>	‘twenty-seven’
𑄎𑄧𑄭𑄛𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>khá kát sá kaku</i>	‘twenty-eight’
𑄎𑄧𑄭𑄛𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>khá kát sá kakyot</i>	‘twenty-nine’

After this, the system counts in a mixture of tens and twenties.

𑄎𑄧𑄭𑄛𑄧𑄛𑄛	<i>khá kát sá kati</i>	‘thirty’
𑄎𑄧𑄭𑄛𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>khá kát sá kati kát thap</i>	‘thirty-one’
𑄎𑄧𑄭𑄛𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>khá kát sá kati nyet thap</i>	‘thirty-two’
𑄎𑄧𑄛	<i>khá nyet</i>	‘forty’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛	<i>khá sám</i>	‘sixty’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>khá fali</i>	‘eighty’

The Lepcha word 𑄎𑄧𑄛 *gyó* ‘one hundred’ is cognate with the Dzongkha and Dränjoke numeral 𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛 *cikja* ‘one hundred’, but note the more conservative consonantism of the Lepcha form. Alternatively, the word 𑄎𑄧𑄛 *so* ‘one hundred’ is found, e.g. 𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛 *so fali* ‘four hundred’, 𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛 *so fangú* ‘five hundred’. The forms 𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛 *búm*, 𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛 *soyá* and 𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛 *cewo*, listed below, would appear to be loans from Dränjoke or Dzongkha 𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛 *bum* ‘lakh’, 𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛 *saya* ‘million’ and 𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛 *j’iwa* ‘crore’ respectively.

𑄎𑄧𑄛	<i>gyó kát</i>	‘one hundred’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛	<i>gyó nyet</i>	‘two hundred’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>tunghrók kát</i>	‘one thousand’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>tunghrók kati</i>	‘ten thousand’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>hritsho kát</i>	‘one myriad’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>búmtsho kát</i>	‘one lakh’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛	<i>búm kát</i>	‘one lakh’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>soyá kát</i>	‘one million, ten lakh’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>cewo kát</i>	‘one crore’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>túngchúr kát</i>	‘one hundred million’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>sosotsho kát</i>	‘one billion’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>sosotshúr kát</i>	‘ten billion’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>therbúm kát</i>	‘one billion’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>thrókthrik kát</i>	‘ten billion’
𑄎𑄧𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛𑄛	<i>sosoyá kát</i>	‘one hundred billion’

The numeral forms discussed above are used in counting. Attributive forms of the numerals are formed by adding the factitive marker འཇུག་ -*bú* to the numeral, e.g. འཇུག་ འཇུག་ *kátbú* ‘the first’. Some speakers add the form འཇུག་ *frón* ‘number’ and prefer to say འཇུག་(འཇུག་) *kátfrónbú*, ‘the first’, or འཇུག་(འཇུག་) *nyetfrónbú*, ‘the second’, etc.

An alternative more fully vigesimal system augments the repertoire of numeral forms based on the score as mentioned above. This system uses the notion འཇུག་ *báng* ‘half of’. Kalimpong speakers of Lepcha, who are usually not closely familiar with this system of counting, consider the system based purely on འཇུག་ *khá* ‘the score’ to be the original counting system, and claim that the འཇུག་ *báng* system is a modern Sikkimese invention. In fact, this system for arriving at numerals 30, 50, 70, 90 and so forth matches the Dränjoke and Dzongkha vigesimal system.

འཇུག་(འཇུག་)	<i>khá báng nyet</i>	‘30’ [score half-of two]
འཇུག་(འཇུག་)འཇུག་འཇུག་	<i>khá báng nyet sá kát</i>	‘31’ [score half-of two with one]
འཇུག་(འཇུག་)	<i>khá báng sám</i>	‘50’ [score half-of three]
འཇུག་(འཇུག་)	<i>khá báng fali</i>	‘70’ [score half-of four]
འཇུག་(འཇུག་)	<i>khá báng fangú</i>	‘90’ [score half-of five]

The form འཇུག་ *báng* is also used as a main verb meaning ‘break, cut, chop wood or bamboo in short pieces’.

- 139 འཇུག་ (འཇུག་) འཇུག་ འཇུག་ འཇུག་ འཇུག་ འཇུག་
sháng ?ore bán-sá báng le
 firewood that knife-with break REQ
 ‘Go ahead and chop up the firewood with the knife.’

The expression འཇུག་(འཇུག་) འཇུག་(འཇུག་) *khábáng sámsám* ‘fifty fifty, an equal share’, is given by Khárpú Támsáng (1980: 257), but was not recognised by Lepcha informants consulted in Kalimpong and Sikkim.

Sikkimese Lepcha textbooks have introduced an additional decimal system, to which Sikkimese schools give preference in their instruction. This system is based on the form འཇུག་ *thep* ‘extra, additional, successive’, e.g. འཇུག་ འཇུག་ *theppa theppa* ‘successively’, which is introduced as a decimal morpheme.

ཅེཤེ	<i>kati</i>	'10'
ཅེཤེ	<i>nyet thep</i>	'20'
ཅེཤེཅེ	<i>nyet thep kát</i>	'21'
ཅེཤེཤེ	<i>sám thep</i>	'30'
ཅེཤེཤེཤེ	<i>fali thep</i>	'40'
ཅེཤེཤེཤེཤེ	<i>fangú thep</i>	'50'
ཅེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེ	<i>tarók thep</i>	'60'
ཅེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེ	<i>kakyók thep</i>	'70'
ཅེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེ	<i>kaku thep</i>	'80'
ཅེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེ	<i>kakyót thep</i>	'90'
ཅེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེཤེ	<i>gyó kát</i>	'100'

Another decimal system was introduced by Colonel Mainwaring at the end of the nineteenth century, for the purpose of teaching arithmetic in schools. (Mainwaring 1876: 116) This system was based on the artificial form *ཅེ ka*, which Mainwaring derived from the numeral *ཅེཤེ kati* 'ten', e.g. *ཅེཤེཤེཤེཤེ kakát sá kát* 'eleven', *ཅེཤེ kanyet* 'twenty', and so on. The system is not in use anymore and it is unclear whether it ever was popular.

In schools, some specialised vocabulary is used for counting and for arithmetic, for example *ཅེ chó* 'even number, pair, couple', *ཅེ nyó* 'odd number', *ཅེཤེཤེཤེ chólúng nóngshang* 'multiply' and *ཅེཤེ dryándo* 'equal to'. Specific units for counting are used in certain professions or in harvesting, such as the word *ཅེཤེ nyíshu* 'twenty', which is used to indicate a certain amount of rice growing in the paddy. This form is evidently the same as the Dränjoke and Dzongkha form *ཅེཤེ nyishu* 'twenty' used in the Sikkimese and Bhutanese decimal system.

The symbols used to indicate numbers in native Lepcha orthography are listed in Diagram 14.

ཅ	ཅ	ཅ	ཅ	ཅ	ཅ	ཅ	ཅ	ཅ
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9

Diagram 14: Lepcha numbers

4.12 *Telling time*

The concept ‘today’ is expressed in Lepcha by the adverb ལཱཱྱ saróng ‘today’. Adverbs expressing days in the immediate past include ལྷཱ tasó ‘yesterday’, sometimes shortened to ལྷ só, ལྷཱཱྱ Pyotshóng or ལྷཱཱྱ Pítshóng ‘day before yesterday, two days ago’, ལྷཱཱྱཱ Pyochám ‘three days ago’ and ལྷཱཱྱཱཱ Pyochót ‘four days ago’. The adverb ལྷཱཱྱཱྱ lúkʔál ‘tomorrow’ can be analysed as a compound of the verb ལྷཱ lúk ‘get up, rise’ (which also serves as the noun ‘morning’) and the adjective ལྷཱཱྱ ʔál ‘new’. Analogous to the way the adverbs of the immediate past are formed, days in the immediate future are expressed by the adverbs ལྷཱཱྱྱ katshóng ‘day after tomorrow’, ལྷཱཱྱྱྱ káchám ‘in three days’ time, after three days’ and ལྷཱཱྱྱྱྱ káchót ‘in four days’ time, after four days’. We also find ལྷཱཱྱྱྱྱ taʔyen for ‘last year’ and ལྷཱཱྱྱྱྱྱ kátaʔyen for ‘three years ago’. The adverb ལྷཱཱྱྱྱྱ ʔotshóng ‘that day’, containing the distal morpheme ལྷཱ ʔo-, was heard in a conversation when a speaker referred to a specific day that was mentioned before in the same conversation. Additional examples of words containing the morphemes ལྷཱ tshóng, ལྷཱཱྱ chám and ལྷཱཱྱྱ chót, which each appear to imply a specific number of days, have not been attested.

Words for now and later include ལྷཱཱྱྱ ʔálóng ‘now, at this very moment’, ལྷཱཱྱྱྱ ʔálóngbá ‘in a moment, in a little while’, ལྷཱཱྱྱྱྱ ʔálónglá ‘still’, ལྷཱཱྱ ʔyá ‘formerly, a long time ago, in the days of old’, ལྷཱཱྱ ʔyo ‘before, formerly, some time ago’, ལྷཱྱ cá ‘just, a moment ago’, ལྷཱཱྱྱ cálong ‘just now, just a moment ago’, ལྷཱཱྱྱྱ cánap ‘last night’, ལྷཱྱྱ cábá ‘some time ago’.

A period of twenty-four hours is referred to as ལྷཱཱྱྱ saʔyák ‘day, day and night’. The hours of daylight are referred to as ལྷཱཱྱྱ sanyí, also spelt as ལྷཱཱྱྱ sanyím or ལྷཱཱྱྱྱ suknyím ‘day, daytime’ and the night-time is referred to as ལྷཱཱྱྱྱ sonáp ‘night, night-time’. Another way of expressing a whole 24-hour period would be by using the expression ལྷཱཱྱྱྱྱ ལྷཱཱྱྱྱ sanyí sonáp ‘day and night’. The word ལྷཱཱྱྱྱྱ róngjín means ‘daily, every day’. Midday or noon is expressed by pointing to the fact that daytime is halfway over, by using ལྷཱྱ phet ‘half’, e.g. ལྷཱཱྱྱྱྱྱ sanyím phet or the shorter ལྷཱྱྱྱྱ nyímphet ‘midday’, and likewise the expression ལྷཱཱྱྱྱྱྱ sonápphet ‘midnight’ is used.

Other adverbs expressing the time of day include ལྷཱྱྱྱྱ náp-mún ‘evening’, ལྷཱྱྱྱྱྱ náp-lúk ‘day and night, morning and evening’, ལྷཱྱྱྱྱ nápzâ ‘dusk’, ལྷཱྱྱྱྱྱ lúk-hróng ‘morning’, ལྷཱྱྱྱྱ somyer ‘dusk’, ལྷཱྱྱྱྱ

solá ‘twilight’, འོ་ལོ་ *sosóng* ‘dawn’, ཅུ་ལོ་ *tsuk-lát* ‘sunrise, east’, ཅུ་ལྷོ་ *tsukkyer* ‘sunset, west’, ཅུ་ལོ་ *tsukgi* ‘afternoon’, ཅུ་ལོ་ *tsukzán* ‘early morning, when sun is completely visible’, ཅུ་ལོ་ *tsuknáng* ‘mid-day’.

A period of time is referred to in Lepcha as ཅུ་ལོ་ *tatsât* ‘time, period of time’. Some names for seasons of the year are འོ་ལོ་ *so?âm* ‘summer’, འོ་ལོ་ *somyáng* ‘rainy season’, འོ་ལོ་ *sosá* ‘dry season’, འོ་ལོ་ *sozóng* ‘winter, be cold’.

The word ལོ་ལོ་ *lávó* for ‘moon’ in Lepcha is also used to indicate a lunar month. A calendar month is referred to as ལོ་ལོ་ *nám lávó*, the word ལོ་ *nám* means ‘year’. A cycle of twelve years is a ལོ་ལོ་ *námkor*, and the twelve years comprising a full cycle are listed below in chronological order. Some people call the fourth year ལོ་ལོ་ *kumthyóng nám* ‘kite year’, rather than ལོ་ལོ་ *punthyóng nám* ‘eagle year’.

ལོ་ལོ་ <i>kalók nám</i>	‘rat year’
ལོ་ལོ་ <i>lóng nám</i>	‘ox year’
ལོ་ལོ་ <i>sathang nám</i>	‘tiger year’
ལོ་ལོ་ <i>punthyóng nám</i>	‘eagle year’
ལོ་ལོ་ <i>sader nám</i>	‘thunder year’
ལོ་ལོ་ <i>bu nám</i>	‘snake year’
ལོ་ལོ་ <i>ʔún nám</i>	‘horse year’
ལོ་ལོ་ <i>lúk nám</i>	‘sheep year’
ལོ་ལོ་ <i>sahu nám</i>	‘monkey year’
ལོ་ལོ་ <i>hík nám</i>	‘chicken year’
ལོ་ལོ་ <i>kajú nám</i>	‘dog year’
ལོ་ལོ་ <i>món nám</i>	‘boar year’

The Lepcha year generally consists of twelve months, but during a period of nineteen years reportedly seven years will have thirteen months. The additional month is called ལོ་ལོ་ *numtsám nyóm* ‘leap month’. The meaning of the names of the different months is not clear in all cases, although ལོ་ལོ་ *glú* means ‘fall down’, ལོ་ལོ་ *rá* means ‘hunt’, ལོ་ལོ་ *ʔít* means ‘creation’ and ལོ་ལོ་ *kursóng* is the name of an orchid and also means ‘bright’.

ལོ་ལོ་ <i>kurnyít nyóm</i>	‘first month of the Lepcha year’
ལོ་ལོ་ <i>kursóng nyóm</i>	‘second month of the Lepcha year’

འཇཱཱ་ <i>thón nyóm</i>	‘third month of the Lepcha year’
འཇཱཱ་ <i>sâm nyóm</i>	‘fourth month of the Lepcha year’
འཇཱཱ་ <i>tafá nyóm</i>	‘fifth month of the Lepcha year’
འཇཱཱ་ <i>blúng nyóm</i>	‘sixth month of the Lepcha year’
འཇཱཱ་ <i>numkum nyóm</i>	‘seventh month of the Lepcha year’
འཇཱཱ་ <i>purvím nyóm</i>	‘eight month of the Lepcha year’
འཇཱཱ་ <i>glú nyóm</i>	‘ninth month of the Lepcha year’
འཇཱཱ་ <i>ʔít nyóm</i>	‘tenth month of the Lepcha year’
འཇཱཱ་ <i>rá nyóm</i>	‘eleventh month of the Lepcha year’
འཇཱཱ་ <i>már nyóm</i>	‘twelfth month of the Lepcha year’

A week of seven days is referred to as འཇཱཱ་ *duntrók* ‘week’. The Lepcha names of the days of the week are listed below. Since འཇཱཱ་ *sanyí*, འཇཱཱ་ *suknyím* and འཇཱཱ་ *saʔyák* all are used for ‘day’, we sometimes may hear འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ *mi saʔyák* and at other times འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ *mi suknyím* or འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ *mi sanyí*, the same holding for the other days of the week. The fourth day of the week is referred to by some people as འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ *nyín saʔyák* ‘day of milk’.

འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ <i>mi saʔyák</i>	‘day of fire, Sunday’
འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ <i>ʔúng saʔyák</i>	‘day of water, Monday’
འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ <i>lang saʔyák</i>	‘day of stone, Tuesday’
འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ <i>kúng saʔyák</i>	‘day of wood, Wednesday’
འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ <i>sukmut saʔyák</i>	‘day of wind, Thursday’
འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ <i>fát saʔyák</i>	‘day of earth, Friday’
འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ <i>punjeng saʔyák</i>	‘day of iron, Saturday’

The Lepcha word for ‘clock’ is འཇཱཱ་ *tsugyer* and the word for ‘hour’ is འཇཱཱ་ *chútsât*, borrowed from Dränjoke and Dzongkha འཇཱཱ་ *chutshö*, although the Nepali loan འཇཱཱ་ *bázá* ‘hour’ is also frequently heard. The four o’clock flower *Mirabilis jalapa*, which opens its flowers in the late afternoon, is referred to as འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ *ʔé bázá falibú ríp*. To ask the time, one may use the phrase འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ *bázá satet buknón*, ‘what’s the time, how many hours has it struck?’. For telling the time in whole hours, one may use several expressions, such as འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ *chútsât tarók ngúnnón* ‘it has become six o’clock’, or འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ *bázá tarók buknón* ‘it has struck six o’clock’. When telling time in half hours, one may say for example འཇཱཱ་ འཇཱཱ་ *bázá sám sa phet buknón* ‘it has struck three and a half o’clock, it’s

half past three'. One may also tell time in terms of minutes after the whole hour, as in the expression 𑄎𑄓𑄗𑄓 𑄎𑄓𑄗𑄓 𑄎𑄓𑄗𑄓 𑄎𑄓𑄗𑄓 𑄎𑄓𑄗𑄓 𑄎𑄓𑄗𑄓 *chútsât fangú ngúnnu minetra khányet nón* 'it has become five o'clock and then forty minutes passed by, it's five forty'.

CHAPTER FIVE

VERBAL MORPHOLOGY

Lepcha has no elaborate conjugational morphology. There is no verbal agreement morphology and actants are not morphologically indexed in the verb. Tense, mood, aspect and other meanings of the verb are expressed by the use of postpositions and auxiliary verbs. Whilst the verbal system of Lepcha may lack the formal complexity of some Himalayan languages, the interest of Lepcha verbal morphology lies in the semantics of the grammatical categories expressed by the Lepcha repertoire of endings and auxiliaries.

5.1 *Verb stems*

All Lepcha verbs have two stem forms, viz. a regular and an inflected stem. The majority of Lepcha verbs end in a consonant, and for these verbs the regular and the inflected stem are one and the same. In other words, all of the verbs with a closed stem and a minority of the verbs with an open stem are invariable. The majority of the verbs which regularly show an open or vowel-final stem, however, additionally exhibit an inflected stem with a final consonant before auxiliary verbs.

The final consonant preserved in the inflected stem of those verbs which show stem alternation may reflect a lost segment or, alternatively, the remnant of some now defunct morphological or morphophonological process. The consonants which occur as finals in such inflected stems are /t/, /n/ and /m/. If the open stem ends in /i/ or /o/, these vowels in the inflected stem systematically change to /í/ and /ó/ respectively. In the glossary, the longer, inflected stem of verbs that show stem alternation is specified because the inflected stem cannot be predicted on the basis of the short stem of the verb.

The question arises as to how the finals /t/, /n/ and /m/ occurring uniquely in inflected stems, such as inflected $\text{ʃ}^{\text{ñ}} \text{lín}$ vs. regular $\text{ʃ}^{\text{w}} \text{li}$

‘say’, འོ་ཚོམ་ vs. འོ་ཟོ་ ‘eat’ and འོ་དྲི་ vs. འོ་དྲི་ ‘come’, differ historically from the finals /t/, /n/ and /m/ of invariable closed verb stems, e.g. འོ་ཀོན་ ‘let, allow’, འོ་ལོམ་ ‘walk’, འོ་མཱ་ ‘do’. Light is shed on this question by the indirect relationship between a final consonant uniquely occurring in an inflected stem and the final consonant occurring in a corresponding deverbative nominal. For example, the final /n/ in the inflected stem འོ་ལོན་ of the verb འོ་ལོ་ ‘say’ corresponds to a final /n/ in the old deverbative form འོ་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་ ‘tongue’, whereas the final /n/ in the inflected stem འོ་ལོན་ of the verb འོ་ལོ་ ‘carry’ corresponds to an /m/ in the nominal derivative འོ་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་ ‘heavy’. Some other examples of regular closed stems of verbs ending in /m/, /n/ or /t/ are འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ ‘hold, retain’, འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ ‘meet’, འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ ‘attach’, འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ ‘remain’, འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ ‘tell, narrate’, འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ ‘become’, འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ ‘cut, sever’, འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ ‘do’ and འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ ‘snatch’.

Auxiliary verbs are a set of verbs which can be distinguished on the basis of both semantic and morphological criteria. Lepcha auxiliary verbs not only exhibit meanings which in other languages are often expressed by modal verbs, e.g. འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ ‘be able, can’, the set of auxiliary verbs can also be defined morphologically in that they combine with the inflected stems of verbs and that they may be negated. Auxiliary verbs differ from particles, which combine with the regular stem or citation form of the verb and may not be negated. Example sentences (140) and (141) are related in that they form part of a dialogue and illustrate the inflected and regular stem of the verb འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ ‘come out, come up, rise’. Examples (143) and (144) are both responses to the statement made in (142), and these three sentences offer examples of the inflected and regular stem of the verb འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ ‘know’.

- 140 འོ་ཇི་མཱ་ འོ་ཇི་མཱ་
tukfyil-sang plâ-wám
 ant-PL.NH come.out-PRG
 ‘Ants are coming out of it.’

- 141 འོ་ཇི་མཱ་
plâm-kón
 come.out-let
 ‘Let them come out.’

142 ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ
ɾore-re ɾáyú-do yâm gát
 that-DEF 2P-self know must
 ‘You ought to be aware of that.’

143 ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ
go ma-yâ-n
 1S NEG-know-NEG
 ‘I don’t know.’

144 ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ
yâ-do ma-gát-ne
 know-self NEG-must-NEG
 ‘I don’t have to know.’

The verb ᄃᄃ *bi* ~ ᄃᄃ *bo* ‘give’ also has two different stems, but in this case the choice for one or the other stem depends on the recipient of the verb. The stem ᄃᄃ *bo* is used when something is given to a first or second person singular or plural recipient, e.g. ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ *kasu-m bo* ‘give to me’, ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ *káyú-m bo* ‘give to us’, ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ *ɾádo-m bo* ‘give to you (S)’, ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ *ɾáyú-m bo* ‘give to you (P)’. The stem ᄃᄃ *bi* is used when something is given to a third person singular or plural recipient, e.g. ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ *hudo-m bi* ‘give to him/her’, ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ *huyú-m bi* ‘give to them’.

145 ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ
ɾóng sare-nun cho ɾáre kasu-m bo
 boy which-ABL book this 1S.OBL-DAT give

ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ
hudo-m go thyák ma
 3S.OBL-DAT 1S recognise AST
 ‘The boy who gave me this book, I recognised him.’

146 ཉུ་ (ལོ་ལེ་) ལཱ་ རྩུ་ལོ་
hík *sót-shang* *go* *?ádo-m*
 chicken kill-*INF* 1S 2S.OBL-DAT

 བློ་ལྷོ་ (ལཱ་ལེ་)
bánkup *bo-sho*
 small.knife give-NPR

 ‘I’ll give you a small knife to kill the chicken.’

This pattern of stem alternation in Lepcha resembles the patterns of stem alternation in biactantial verbal agreement systems observed in other Tibeto-Burman languages. The Lepcha alternation is clearly triggered by the personal number of the ‘patient’ or recipient, and in this pattern we see a vestige of a grammatical phenomenon of interest to the historical linguist.

5.2 *Permission, ability, opportunity, exigency*

To be allowed or permitted to do something is expressed by the modal verb ལོ་ *kón* ‘let, allow’, as in the following examples.

147 ཉུ་ལོ་ རྩུ་ ཉུ་ ལོ་
hudo-m *ʔúng* *bín* *ma-kón*
 3S.OBL-DAT water give NEG-allow
 ‘Don’t allow anyone to give him water.’

148 ལོ་ ཉུ་ལོ་ རྩུ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
go *hudo-m* *ʔúng* *thóng* *kón*
 1S 3S.OBL-DAT water drink allow
 ‘I let him drink some water.’

149 ཉུ་ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
huyú-m *dyút* *kón*
 3P-DAT argue allow
 ‘Let them argue.’

Example (150) gives the first line of a song that was fairly well-known in the Kalimpong hills during the 1990s.

150 ላላግ ገላራ ሱ ገላራ ደገግ ገላራ
lyáng ገáre-sá fát ገáre-ká dúnggít
 land this-GEN earth this-LOC tradition

 ፍገግ ሱ ገላራ
káyú-sá mák ma-kón
 1P-GEN die NEG-allow

 ‘Our traditions of this land, on this soil, don’t let them perish.’

The verb ገግ *ngún* can be used as a main verb expressing the meaning ‘become, happen, occur’. In addition to its use as a main verb, the verb ገግ *ngún* can also be used as a modal verb to express whether or not an action is seen as necessary, allowed, all right or as it should be. The verb may be used to express confirmation, affirmation or assent, like English ‘OK’. Example (151) may also be translated by ‘What’s the matter?’.

151 ግግ ገግ ገግ
shú ngún-nón
 what become-RES
 ‘What happened?’

152 ገላራ ገግ ገግ
ገádo-sá bri ngún-nón
 2S.OBL-GEN marriage become-RES
 ‘Did you get married?’

153 ገላራ ገላራ ገግ ገግ
ገáshúm-ገáshúm ngún-bám
 fat-fat become-PRG
 ‘He’s getting fatter and fatter.’

154 ፍገግ ገግ ገግ ገግ
káyú tabá nóng ngún-sho
 1P up.there go become-NPR
 ‘Is it OK if we go up there?’

- 155 (ω ε) ο(ωω(ε(ωδ τ ζ }
so yu bá lyáng-ká nóng ma-ngún
 rain descend when land-LOC go NEG-become
 ‘When it rains you should not go outside.’

- 156 ε(ω) ζ(δ(ε(ζ }
kasu-m ?ábi-do ngún
 1s.OBL-DAT here-self become
 ‘I’m comfortable right here.’

To be able to do something in the sense of being in a position to do something or being physically capable of doing something is expressed by the modal verb ζ *khu* ‘be able to’. The inflected stem of the verb ζ *khu* ‘be able to’ is ζ *khut*.

- 157 ζ(ε(ζ(ζ(ζ }
?áre hó rok ma-khu-n
 that 2S read NEG-be.able-NEG
 ‘Can’t you read that?’

To be able to do something in the sense of knowing how to perform a certain task or activity is expressed by the verb ζ *yâ* ‘know, know how to’. The verb ζ *yâ* is also used in the sense of knowing something, having knowledge about something being aware of something. The verb ζ *thyák* ‘recognise’ is used in the sense of knowing someone or recognising who someone is.

- 158 ζ(ζ(ωε(ω ζ(ε(ζ }
shú mát-shang go ma-yâ-ne
 what do-INF 1S NEG-know-NEG
 ‘What to do, I don’t know.’

- 159 ζ(ζ(ζ(ζ }
hu ma-thyák-ne
 3S NEG-recognise-NEG
 ‘I don’t know him.’

- 160 ལོ་རྩོམ་ལྟོགས་ལྟོགས་
go róng-ríng yâ-wám
 1S Lepcha-language know-PRG
 ‘I know Lepcha.’

The verb ལྟོགས་ *jel* ‘understand, know a language, speak a language’, is used specifically when the speaker wants to express whether he does or does not speak or understand a language fluently, cf. examples (161) and (162).

- 161 ལོ་རྩོམ་ལྟོགས་ལྟོགས་
go róng-ríng jel-bám
 1S Lepcha-language understand-PRG
 ‘I speak Lepcha.’

- 162 ལོ་རྩོམ་ལྟོགས་ལྟོགས་མེད་པའི་སྐད་ཅེས་པའི་སྐད་
go ?ádo-sá ?áring ma-jel-ne
 1S 2S.OBL-GEN language NEG-understand-NEG
 ‘I didn’t understand what you said.’

- 163 ལོ་རྩོམ་ལྟོགས་ལྟོགས་མེད་པའི་སྐད་ཅེས་པའི་སྐད་
go ?ádo-sá ?áring ma-thyo-ne
 1S 2S.OBL-GEN language NEG-hear-NEG
 ‘I didn’t hear what you said.’

The verb ལྟོགས་ *gát* ‘must, need, require’ expresses a need or desire, and is used as a modal of exigency. When the verb ལྟོགས་ *gát* is negated, it may express the sense of ‘it isn’t necessary’, ‘it isn’t wanted’ or ‘don’t want’.

- 164 ལྟོགས་ལྟོགས་ལྟོགས་ལྟོགས་
lúk-hrong ngol-do lúk gát-sho
 morning early-self get.up must-NPR
 ‘I’ll have to get up early in the morning.’

- 165 ཐོའམ་ ཏཱ་མི་ ལོའལེ
vâm-do-m theng yâm gât-sho
 song-self-DAT sing know must-NPR
 ‘We ought to know how to sing a song.’
- 166 ཐོའལེ་ ཏཱ་མི་ ལོའལེ་ ལོའལེ
bânkup ?âre-do shúmâtne gât-shang
 small.knife this-self why must-INF
 ‘What do you need this knife for?’

5.3 Verbs ‘to be’

The verbs in Lepcha which cover senses of English ‘to be’ are ལོ་ *go* and རྩེ་ *nyí*. The verb ལོ་ *go* is used as an identity marker, to say that X is Y and so to express the identity or inherent quality of a person, entity or thing. Incidentally, the verb ལོ་ *go* is homophonous with the first person singular pronoun ལོ་ *go*.

- 167 ཏཱ་མི་ མཚ་ ལོ་ རྩེ་
?âre cho go ma
 this book be AST
 ‘This is a book.’
- 168 ཏཱ་མི་ རྩེ་ལོ་ལོ་ རྩེ་ ལོ་ རྩེ་
?âre kasu-sá lí go ma
 this 1S.OBL-GEN house be AST
 ‘This is my house.’
- 169 ལུ་ རྩེ་ལོ་ ལོ་ རྩེ་
hu nyúrpanɡ go ma
 3S deaf be AST
 ‘He is deaf.’

The verb རྩེ་ *nyí* covers the attributive, existential and locative senses of English ‘to be’. The verb རྩེ་ *nyí* may be used to ascribe a quality to someone or something, e.g. (170) and (173), to indicate the whereabouts of the subject of the sentence, e.g. (171), or in an exis-

tential sense to indicate the availability or presence of a person, commodity or thing, e.g. (172).

- 170 འོ་ཕྱི་མེ་མོ་ མེ་ མོ་
vóm ʔákrím nyí ma
 salt bitter be AST
 ‘Salt is bitter.’
- 171 ཡུ་ལུ་མེ་མོ་མེ་མོ་མེ་མོ་ མེ་ མོ་
kasu-sá lí manegombú-ká nyí ma
 1S.OBL-GEN house Mane.Gomba-LOC be AST
 ‘My house is in Mane Gomba.’
- 172 ཡུ་ལུ་མེ་མོ་ མེ་མོ་ མེ་ མོ་
kasu-sá ʔákup nyet nyí ma
 1S.OBL-GEN child two be AST
 ‘I have two children.’
- 173 རེ་ལུ་མེ་མོ་ མེ་མོ་ མེ་ མོ་
ʔáre taʔyu ʔázuk nyí ma
 this girl pretty be AST
 ‘This girl is beautiful.’

The clause-final particle མོ་ *ma* (AST) is the assertive particle, which adds force to a statement. Historically, the assertive particle may derive from an earlier Tibeto-Burman ‘to be’. The assertive particle མོ་ *ma* can be translated into English as ‘it is so’, ‘it is the case that’. The Lepcha particle would appear to be cognate with the Hayu assertive particle *-m* and a copula reflected as a full verb in many Kiranti languages, the stem of which characteristically consists of an initial *m*-with some associated vowel (cf. van Driem 1990: 569, 1993: 168-176, Kortlandt 1984: 182, Michailovsky 1988: 93, 190, 192-193). In questions, the assertive particle may be used as in example (176), which may be contrasted to the use of the clause-final interrogative particle ལོ་ *gó* (Q) in sentence (177).

174 ལོ་ རྩེ་ ཅོ་ བློ་ ཅོ་
go nám tarók thák-nón ma
 1S year six be.complete-RES AST

‘I am six years old.’

175 རྩེ་ ལོ་ རྩེ་ རྩེ་ ཅོ་
ríp-sá ṣári nyí ma
 flower-GEN scent be AST

‘The flower has a [strong] smell.’

176 རྩེ་ ལོ་ རྩེ་ ལོ་
hó sabá nóng-det gó
 2S where go-move Q

‘Where are you going?’

177 རྩེ་ ལོ་ རྩེ་ ཅོ་
hó sabá nóng-det ma
 2S where go-move AST

‘Where is it that you are going?’

The form ལོ་ *gum* (be.AST) is understood to be a contracted form of the verb ལོ་ *go* ‘be’ and the assertive particle ཅོ་ *ma*.

178 ལོ་ རྩེ་ རྩེ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
lyáng ṣáre róngkup bámlyáng gum
 land this Lepcha homeland be.AST

‘This land is the Lepcha homeland.’

179 ལོ་ རྩེ་ ལོ་
go tím-bú gum
 1S big-FCT be.AST

‘I am the big one.’

5.4 Negation

Negation of verbs is expressed by means of the negative prefix ཅོ་ *ma-* in combination with the negative suffix རྩེ་ *-ne*, e.g. ལོ་ ཅོ་ རྩེ་ *go mazone*

‘I didn’t eat’, ɸ hu ʔábi sathála ma-lát-ne ‘he didn’t go’. The negative affixes can be seen as a single discontinuous morpheme and are attached to the regular stem of the verb. When the stem of the verb is open, the negative suffix ɲ -ne may be shortened to -n, e.g. ɸ ma-nyí-n ‘there isn’t’.

- 180 ɸ hu ʔábi sathála ma-lát-ne
 hu ʔábi sathála ma-lát-ne
 3S here always NEG-return-NEG
 ‘He never came here.’

- 181 ɸ ma-nóng-ne gang ʔádom bo pú
 hó ma-nóng-ne gang ʔádom bo pú
 2S NEG-go-NEG if 2S.OBL give PSB
 ‘If you don’t go, I might give it to you.’

The regular stem of verbs is used as the imperative. A negative imperative is formed by adding the negative prefix ɸ ma- to the regular stem of the verb, e.g. ɸ ma-mát ‘don’t’, ɸ ma-kyân ‘don’t fuss, don’t worry’, cf. (182). If the negative suffix ɲ -ne were used in example (182), as in ɸ vâm ma-theng-ne ma-jók-ne, the sentence would not express a negative imperative but a negated preterite tense and could be translated as ‘He did not sing, he did not speak.’

- 182 ɸ vâm ma-theng ma-jók
 vâm ma-theng ma-jók
 song NEG-sing NEG-speak
 ‘Don’t sing, don’t speak!’

5.5 Gerund and the participle

A present gerund is expressed by adding the ending ɸ -lung (GER) to the verb. When the ending ɸ -lung (GER) is affixed to the verb, the resultant gerund expresses an activity which is simultaneous, concurrent or contemporaneous with the activity, situation or event denoted by the main verb of the sentence or syntagma. The subject of the main verb and the subject of the gerund in ɸ -lung are one and the same,

and the meaning of the suffix ལྟ་ *-lung* is simultaneity with the action expressed by the main verb. The morpheme ལྟ་ *-lung* happens to be homophonous with a verb meaning ‘spill, spill of liquids or grains, pour as water or rice’.

- 183 ཇལ་ལྟ་ སྐྱོ་ལྟ་ སྐྱོ་ལྟ་
ʔályú lík-lung thít-nón
 cat call-GER reach-RES
 ‘The cat arrived here caterwauling.’

- 184 ཇལ་ལྟ་ སྐྱོ་ལྟ་ ལྟ་
zo-lung ngán le
 eat-GER remain REQ
 ‘Carry on eating, please’

- 185 ལྟ་ལྟ་ (ཇལ་ལྟ་) ཇལ་ལྟ་ ཇལ་ལྟ་
hu-nun cho rok-lung ʔázóm zo
 3S-ABL book read-GER food eat
 ‘He ate his food whilst reading a book.’

The participle is formed by adding the ending ལྟ་ *-wung* (PTC) to a verb, e.g. (186), (187). Used as a gerund, modifying a clause, the participle precedes the event denoted by the main verb, e.g. (188). The ending ལྟ་ *-wung* appears to have both a participial and a nominalising function, e.g. (187), (190). Older speakers of Lepcha point to a residual morphophonological pattern affecting the initial of ལྟ་ *-wung*, and claim the past participial ending is spelt ལྟ་ *-wung* after verbs ending in a vowel, *-ng*, *-n*, *-m* or *-l*, but ལྟ་ *-kung* after verbs ending in *-k*, ལྟ་ *-tung* after verbs ending in *-t*, ལྟ་ *-rung* after verbs ending in *-r*, ལྟ་ *-pung* after verbs ending in *-p*, e.g. (189), (190).

- 186 ལྟ་ལྟ་ལྟ་ ཇལ་ལྟ་
thyen-wung-sá ʔáring
 laugh-PTC-GEN language
 ‘funny language’

- 187 \int (sh) -re (thyo) -re \int \int áryúm gum
shi-wung-re thyo-wung-re len ?áryúm gum
 see-PTC-DEF hear-PTC-DEF than good be.AST
 ‘Seeing is better than hearing.’
- 188 (ω \int (thi) -sá (nahán hu \int úk- $hát$)
go thi-wung-sá nahán hu zúk-hát
 1S reach-PTC-GEN before 3S make-PRF
 ‘Before my return, he finished it.’
- 189 \int (hudo - $sá$ (gyó \int úk- $kung$ - $sá$ \int ung- $pang$)
hudo-sá gyó zúk-kung-sá sung-pang
 3S.OBL-GEN quarrel make-PTC-GEN story-PL.NH
- \int (káyú - $sá$ \int híkúng (\int ábo- $sang$ - nu \int olóm)
káyú-sá thikúng ?ábo-sang-nu ?olóm
 1P-GEN great.grandfather father-PL.H-ABL like.that
- \int (káyú - m dun)
káyú-m dun
 1P-DAT tell
 ‘The stories of the quarrels he got into, our fathers
 and great-grandfathers told them to us like that.’
- 190 (\int hó- $lá$ \int álut $mát$ - nu rok - $kung$ ma - $nyí$ - n - $bú$)
hó-lá ?álut mát-nu rok-kung ma-nyí-n-bú
 2S-also heart do-ABL read-PTC NEG-be-NEG-NOM
 ‘You used not to study very attentively either.’

5.6 Infinitive

The infinitival ending is shang (INF). Infinitives may function as the complement of a main verb. The infinitive indicates an action or situation as such.

- 191 ཡེ་ཨེ་ མེ་ཤེ་ ལོ་ མེ་ཤོ་
káyú mák-shang sák ma-cíng
 1P die-INF mind NEG-think
 ‘We do not even think about dying.’
- 192 རེ་ཚེ་ ལམ་ འཤེ་
ʔázóm sathá zo-shang
 food when eat-INF
 ‘When are we going to eat?’
- 193 ལོ་ འཤེ་ མེ་
go nóng-shang mát
 1S go-INF do
 ‘I acted as if I were going.’
- 194 མེ་ ཤེ་ རེ་ཚེ་ ལོ་
thám vyet-shang ʔájóm gum
 thing ask-INF easy be.AST
 ‘It’s simple to ask a question.’
- 195 ལོ་ ཨེ་ ཤེ་
go shú yâ-shang
 1S what know-INF
 ‘What do I know?’

The infinitival ending ཤེ་ *-shang* may also express intent or purpose, and could be translated as ‘in order to’. In such cases, the infinitival ending ཤེ་ *shang* is often, but not necessarily, reinforced with the locative suffix ཡེ་ *-ká*.

- 196 ལོ་ མེ་ ཤེ་ རེ་ རེ་ ལོ་
go lí pár-shang kóm tsung-bám
 1S house buy-INF money save-PRG
 ‘I am saving money to buy a house.’

- 197 འཇེ་ལེ་མཁེ་ ལོ་ལེ
zo-shang-ká *ʔázóm* *gát-sho*
 eat-INF-LOC food must-NPR
 ‘In order to eat, there must be food.’
- 198 གུ་མེ་འཇེ་ འཇེ་ལེ་ ལོ་ལེ
ʔátím *ngún-shang* *zo-thóng-do* *gát*
 big become-INF eat-drink-self must
 ‘One must eat and drink in order to get big.’
- 199 ལོ་ སྒྲོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
go lí *drâm* *khyâ-shang-ká* *dâng-bám*
 1S house quick arrive-INF-LOC run-PRG
 ‘I am running so that I will get home quickly.’
- 200 གུ་ལེ་ སྒྲོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
ʔádo *lí-ká* *thi-shang*
 2S.OBL house-LOC reach-INF
- མེ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
tatsât *satet* *zok-shang*
 time how.much flow-INF
 ‘How long will it take to get to your house?’

5.7 Aorist

The unmarked or zero form of the verb in Lepcha indicates a preterite tense, which denotes actions anterior to the speech moment without any inherent implication with regard to result or duration. The zero form of the verb may express just the transpiration of an event in past time, merely indicating that the situation took place at some point in the past. The zero form of the verb may also impose an inceptive reading of the situation, expressing that the situation has only just started to take place.

- 201 (ω ε)
 so yu
 rain descend
 ‘It rained.’
 ‘It’s raining.’ ‘It has begun to rain.’

When used in the context of a narrative structure in colloquial speech, the unmarked form of the verb is used to express a sequence of events.

- 202 ཇུ་ལོ་ ལོ་ རྩེ་ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
 tasó go Dárjúlyáng nóng
 yesterday 1S Darjeeling go
- (ω) ཇུ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
 go-nu ?obi tshóng pá
 1S-ABL there goods buy
- (ω) ཇུ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
 go-nu ?ore lí-ká blá-yú-nu
 1S-ABL that home-LOC take-descend-ABL
- ε(ω) ཇུ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
 kasu ?áyu-do-m bi
 1S.OBL wife-self-DAT give
- ཇུ་ (ω) ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
 ?ân go-nu hudo kâ-shang li
 and 1S-ABL 3S.OBL cook-INF say
- ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་
 hu-nu ?ore kâ ?ân káyú-nu zo
 3S-ABL that cook and 1P-ABL eat

‘Yesterday I went to Darjeeling, I bought some things there, I brought them back home, gave them to my wife, and I told her to cook them, she cooked them and we ate them.’

5.8 *Progressive tense*

The progressive auxiliary verb ḍ(*bám* (PRG) expresses that the situation denoted by the main verb is in effect or in progress. The progressive auxiliary is used both with stative and with non-stative verbs, and is not restricted to dynamic verbs. When used as a main verb, ḍ(*bám* means ‘dwell, reside, be in or at a place’. When the progressive auxiliary is attached to a verb stem ending in a vowel, the allomorphs ḍ(*-wám* or ḍ(*-?ám* may be used.

203 ህ) ሳጅጅ
hu lok-bám
 3S dance-PRG
 ‘She is dancing.’

204 ፎ(ገ)ገ(ጸ(ገ)ገ ገገገገ
kasu-sá ?ámú-re jú-wám
 1S.OBL-GEN mother-DEF live-PRG
 ‘My mother is [still] alive.’

The verb ገገ *det* ‘move’ is used as a dynamic auxiliary with verbs of motion, e.g. (205). In example sentence (206), the meanings of the dynamic and progressive auxiliaries are combined in a single form.

205 ህ) ሳገገ ገ
hu nóng-det ma
 3S go-move AST
 ‘He is on his way.’

206 ህ) ሳገገጅ ገ
hu nóng-det-bám ma
 3S go-move-PRG AST
 ‘He is on his way.’

5.9 *Non-preterite tense*

A non-preterite tense may be signalled by adding the verbal ending ገገ *-sho* (NPR) to the verb. The non-preterite tense is used to describe

situations which take place in the non-past, i.e. in the present or the future, e.g. (207) or to describe situations which are true in general, e.g. (208). Sentence (207) may express a future meaning, e.g. ‘the boys will go to school’, but if the speaker had wanted to express that the situation was in progress, it is likely that he would have used the progressive auxiliary *ö* *bám*, e.g. «ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ *ʔóngsang cho rokbám* ‘the boys are on their way to school’. The non-preterite tense marker *ᄃ* *sho* may be combined with other verbal endings or postpositions if this yields a semantically plausible meaning, viz. (209).

207 «ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃ ᄃᄃᄃ
ʔóng-sang cho rok-sho
 boy-PL.H book read-NPR
 ‘The boys go to school.’

208 (X-ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ
hlo-ká sozóng-sho
 peak-LOC be.cold-NPR
 ‘It will be cold on the mountain peak.’

209 (X-ᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃᄃ
hlo-ká sozóng-sho lyók
 peak-LOC be.cold-NPR IFR
 ‘It will probably be cold on the mountain peak.’

The non-preterite tense may be used to describe a situation or activity which is taking place at the present time, an activity which the speaker is planning to perform, or an event or situation in that the speaker is certain or convinced will take place soon.

210 (ᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ ᄃᄃᄃᄃ
go vâm-kát theng-sho
 1S song-one sing-NPR
 ‘I shall sing a song.’

- 211 ལོ་མཁོ་ལོ་མཁོ་
 go *rádo-m* *cho* *bo-sho*
 1S 2S.OBL-DAT book give-NPR
 ‘I’ll give you the book.’
- 212 ལོ་ཕུང་ལོ་ཕུང་
 go *punzók-ká* *nóng-sho*
 1S forest-LOC go-NPR
 ‘I will go to the forest.’

5.10 *The factitive marker with verbs*

When used with verbs, the factitive marker ལོ་-*bú* (FCT) conveys an imperfective meaning and indicates a state, a matter of fact or a situation as such. In other words, the Lepcha imperfective indicates whether an event has taken place or is taking place.

- 213 ལོ་ལོ་
bám-bú
 dwell-FCT
 ‘Are they staying?’
- 214 ལོ་ལོ་
tú *nóng-sho-bú*
 who go-NPR-FCT
 ‘Who will be going?’

The factitive marker ལོ་-*bú* can be seen as a single grammatical morpheme with a varying syntactic scope, acting mainly as a verbal marker indexing imperfective aspect and as a clause-final marker nominalising a syntagma (cf. Section 6.11). In all cases the meaning of the suffix is one of reification. The factitive marker ལོ་-*bú* has close parallels in other languages of the Himalayas, where there often is a morpheme which both nominalises verbs and clauses and, when affixed to the main verb of a sentence, marks a type of imperfective aspectual meaning (cf. van Driem 1987: 193-199, 1993a: 190-197, 1993b, 2001: 654, Opgenort 2004: 244-246, Rutgers 1998: 231-263).

- 215 (ω) ʃeɔʒ ɛ̃ ɳ(ɔʒ) ʒɸ̃
 go-nu shi-bú só lát-bú maró
 1S-ABL see-FCT yesterday return-FCT man
 ‘I saw the man who returned yesterday.’

5.11 *Aktionsart auxiliaries*

Aktionsart auxiliaries add a semantic dimension to the meaning of the verb they modify. The four such auxiliaries discussed in this section also occur as main verbs.

5.11.1 *The perfect auxiliary*

The perfect auxiliary ɸ̃ (*hát* (PRF), which occurs as a main verb in the meaning ‘lose, leave behind’, signals that the situation occurred sometime in the past and is still relevant. The perfect auxiliary ɸ̃ (*hát* (PRF) points to the relevance of a situation to the current moment, e.g. (217), rather than simply locating the situation at some point in the past, e.g. (216). Sentences in which the perfect auxiliary ɸ̃ (*hát* (PRF) is used are typically translated into English by using the English perfect, often accompanied by the relational adverbs ‘already’ or ‘just’.

- 216 (ω) ʒɸ̃ ɛ̃ (ɛ̃) ʃɔ
 go ʒóng-re-m kám kóm bi
 1S boy-DEF-DAT little.bit money give
 ‘I gave the boy some money.’
- 217 (ω) ʒɸ̃ ɛ̃ (ɛ̃) ʃɔɸ̃
 go ʒóng-re-m kám kóm bi-hát
 1S dog-DEF-DAT little.bit money give-PRF
 ‘I have already given the boy some money.’
- 218 (ω) ʃɔ(ɳ)ɳ(ω) ɳɸ̃(ɸ) ɸ̃ɸ̃
 go thi-wung-sá nahán hu zúk-hát
 1S reach-PFG-GEN before 3S make-PRF
 ‘Before my arrival, he had already done it.’

219 𐄖𐄚𐄙𐄚𐄚 (𐄚𐄚𐄚) 𐄚𐄚𐄚𐄚 𐄚𐄚𐄚 𐄚𐄚𐄚
saróng-sá so-nu kasu-sá nyót lók-hát
 today-GEN rain-ABL 1S.OBL-GEN field damage-PRF
 ‘Today’s rain has damaged our field.’

220 𐄚𐄚 𐄚𐄚 𐄚𐄚𐄚𐄚
hu bri mát-hát
 3S marriage do-PRF
 ‘He’s already married.’

5.11.2 *The resultative auxiliary*

The resultative auxiliary 𐄚𐄚 *nón* (RES), which appears to be derived from the verb 𐄚𐄚 *nóng* ‘go’, signals that a state or an event exists as a result of a transition in the past. The resultative auxiliary stresses the result or outcome of the situation denoted by the main verb and implies an absolute transition. When the resultative auxiliary is used with verbs of motion, the meaning added by the auxiliary can literally be understood as ‘getting into motion’ in order to perform the action denoted by the main verb.

221 𐄚𐄚𐄚𐄚
mák-nón
 die-RES
 ‘He died.’

222 𐄚𐄚𐄚 𐄚𐄚𐄚𐄚 𐄚𐄚 𐄚𐄚𐄚𐄚
go-nu myón-nón hó shú li
 1S-ABL forget-RES 2S what say
 ‘I forgot what you said.’

223 𐄚𐄚𐄚𐄚 𐄚𐄚𐄚𐄚 𐄚𐄚𐄚𐄚 𐄚𐄚
tungvyeng thok-nón tú-nu thok
 door close-RES who-ABL close
 ‘The door is closed, who closed it?’

5.11.3 *The exhaustive auxiliary*

The exhaustive auxiliary tho (EXH) indicates that an activity or action has come to an end. This auxiliary focuses on the termination of the event. The form tho is also used as a main verb ‘put’.

- 224 $\text{go-nun-do cho } \text{?áre rok-tho ma}$
 1S-ABL-self book this read-EXH AST
 ‘I read this book myself.’

- 225 $\text{?ázóm ?áre tú-nu zo-hát-tho}$
 rice this who-ABL eat-PRF-EXH
 ‘Who has eaten this rice?’

Although a construction containing the resultative auxiliary nón also implies termination, the resultative auxiliary nón focuses on a transition in the past. By contrast, the exhaustive auxiliary tho expresses the thorough enactment or performance of the activity or situation denoted by the verb. The action has been performed thoroughly, or the situation has been effectuated exhaustively. The suffixes nón and tho are sometimes used in combination.

- 226 huyú thi-nón
 3P reach-RES
 ‘Did they arrive?’

- 227 thi-nón-tho
 reach-RES-EXH
 ‘They arrived.’

- 228 $\text{tasó-do lát-nón-tho}$
 yesterday-self return-RES-EXH
 ‘They returned yesterday.’

5.11.4 *The completive auxiliary*

The completive auxiliary lel (CMP), also used as a main verb ‘complete’ indicates that an activity is completed or fulfilled. The completive auxiliary specifies that the event described by the main verb is carried out to completion.

- 229 $\epsilon(\text{ka}) \text{ (} \text{zám-nun) } \text{(} \text{yók) } \text{(} \text{áre) } \text{(} \text{zúk-nu) } \text{(} \text{lel-ka)$
 P1–three–ABL work this make–ABL complete–LOC
 ‘Let us three finish this work.’

- 230 $\text{(} \text{ázóm) } \text{(} \text{zo-lel-nu) } \text{(} \text{rok)$
 rice eat–CMP–ABL read
 ‘After you have eaten your food, go and study.’

- 231 $\text{(} \text{go) } \text{(} \text{mák-lel-nu) } \text{(} \text{tagrikup) } \text{(} \text{áre-nu) } \text{(} \text{shú) } \text{(} \text{mát) } \text{(} \text{te)$
 1S die–CMP–ABL boy this–ABL what do DUB
 ‘What will this boy do after I die?’

- 232 $\text{(} \text{go-nun-do) } \text{(} \text{cho) } \text{(} \text{áre) } \text{(} \text{rok-lel-hát)$
 1S–ABL–self book this read–CMP–PRF
 ‘I read the whole book myself.’

5.12 *The locative suffix with verbs*

When the locative suffix -ká is attached to a verb it may fulfil one of two different functions, i.e. a supine or an adhortative function. When the locative suffix marks the verbal complement of a main verb, it fulfils a supine function. When the locative suffix marks the main verb of a syntagma, it fulfils an adhortative function. The core meaning of the locative morpheme remains the same.

The supine expresses the sense ‘in order to’ and is attached to a verb by which it becomes the verbal complement, denoting a situation towards which the activity denoted by the main verb is directed. Su-

pine forms marked by the locative suffix ㄟ *-ká* may appear as the complements of verbs of motion as well as of other verbs.

- 233 𠄎 𠄎𠄎 𠄎𠄎 𠄎𠄎
hu pádo-m ngâk-ká thi
 3S 2S.OBL-DAT look-LOC reach
 ‘He came to see you.’

- 234 𠄎 𠄎𠄎𠄎𠄎 𠄎𠄎𠄎𠄎 𠄎𠄎𠄎
hu cho rok-shang-ká yânthó-ká nóng ma
 3S book read-INF-LOC school-LOC go AST
 ‘He went to school in order to study.’

The second function of the locative morpheme ㄟ *-ká* in combination with a verb is an adhortative function. The adhortative meaning of a main verb marked by the locative suffix ㄟ *-ká* is the result of the fundamental locative meaning of the suffix interacting with the highest syntactic node in the syntagma, thus expressing the goal towards which the entire event structure is directed. The supine verbs serve as complements of the main verb of a syntagma, whereas adhortative forms in ㄟ *-ká* serve as main verbs themselves.

- 235 𠄎𠄎𠄎𠄎𠄎 𠄎𠄎𠄎
hudo-sá lí-ká nóng-ká
 3S.OBL-GEN house-LOC go-LOC
 ‘Let’s go to his house.’

- 236 𠄎𠄎𠄎𠄎 𠄎 𠄎𠄎𠄎𠄎
vâm ma-theng-ká hu dá-nyí-wám
 song NEG-sing-LOC 3S rest-be-PRG
 ‘Let’s not sing, he is resting.’

5.13 *The ablative suffix with verbs*

A verb marked by the ablative suffix 𠄎 ~ 𠄎 *-nun* ~ *-nu* expresses a situation which serves as the source of the action denoted by the main verb. However, the meaning expressed by the ablative suffix is not so much a matter of cause as it is of point of origin.

237 གཤམ་ཚེ་ལྷན་གྱི་ལྷན་པོ་ཤེ
ḡámik ḡok-nu ngâk gang gun shi
 eye open-ABL look if all see
 ‘If you open your eyes and look, you will see it all.’

238 ལུ་མུ་རེ་ཤུ་ལྷན་གྱི་ལྷན་པོ་ཤེ
shúmú-re ḡágyáp zo-nu dok-bám
 man-DEF much eat-ABL be.ill-PRG
 ‘The man fell ill after he ate too much.’

239 ཨོ་ཨོ་ཨོ་ཨོ་ཨོ་ཨོ་
hó tasó ka-sá lí-nu ngol-do
 2S yesterday 1S-GEN house-ABL early-self

འོ་ཨོ་ཨོ་ཨོ་ཨོ་ཨོ་
nóng-nu-re go-nu sút dun-shang myón-nón
 go-ABL-DEF 1S-ABL message tell-INF forget-RES
 ‘Because you left my house early yesterday, I forgot to give you the message.’

In what may be described as an ergative function, ལྷན་གྱི་ལྷན་པོ་ *-nun ~ -nu* tends to be suffixed to the agent of transitive verbs or the ‘transitive subject’, particularly in preterite time. A discussion on ergativity in Lepcha may shed more light on the meaning of the Lepcha ablative category.

Ergativity in Lepcha is manifested by the behaviour and meaning of the suffix ལྷན་གྱི་ལྷན་པོ་ *-nun ~ -nu* when attached to the agentive argument of a transitive verb. In this function Lepcha ལྷན་གྱི་ལྷན་པོ་ *-nun ~ -nu* works quite differently than a classic ergative. Lepcha ལྷན་གྱི་ལྷན་པོ་ *-nun ~ -nu* is used when an animate agent and an animate patient are linked by a transitive verb to make clear who is doing what to whom. The suffix ལྷན་གྱི་ལྷན་པོ་ *-nun ~ -nu* is also used to highlight the agentive character of an animate entity which acts as the agent of an activity, whether this be transitive or intransitive. Lepcha ལྷན་གྱི་ལྷན་པོ་ *-nun ~ -nu* likewise marks the instrument whereby an activity is performed or may indicate the cause of an activity or state. In an ergative function, Lepcha

ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ~ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ~ -*nun* ~ -*nu* is more likely to occur when the verb is transitive and, when the subject is animate because in these cases the agentive character of the subject is either more obvious or more pronounced.

- 240 རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ (རྩོམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་) ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
kajú-nun lóng-re-m tsúk ma
 dog-ABL boy-DEF-DAT bite AST
 ‘The dog bit the boy.’
- 241 (ལྷོ་) ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ (ལྷོ་ལྷོ་) ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
go-nu tasó l’yók ma-zúk-ne
 1S-ABL yesterday work NEG-make-NEG
 ‘Yesterday I did not do any work.’
- 242 (ལྷོ་) ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ (ལྷོ་ལྷོ་) ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
go-nu hudo-sá ta’lyukup-re-m buk-hát
 1S-ABL 3S.OBL-GEN daughter-DEF-DAT hit-PRF
 ‘I hit his daughter.’
- 243 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ (ལྷོ་ལྷོ་) ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
hudo-sá ta’lyukup-nu kasu-m
 3S.OBL-GEN daughter-ABL 1S.OBL-DAT
- ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་ ལྷོ་
lá buk ma
 also hit AST
 ‘His daughter hit me too.’

The occurrence of the Lepcha ending ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ~ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ~ -*nun* ~ -*nu* cannot be described by a mechanical rule. In many respects, the factors motivating the use of Lepcha ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ~ ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ ~ -*nun* ~ -*nu* in an ergative sense resemble the semantic considerations which determine the use or non-use of the ergative suffix in Dzongkha (van Driem 1998). For example, the ergative suffix is also more likely to occur in the past tense because the agentive meaning of the Lepcha ergative is more likely to be appropriate in contexts where the activity expressed has already actually taken place. In both Dzongkha and Lepcha, it appears that this phenomenon has to do with the widespread tendency in ergative lan-

guages to conceptualise an already performed transitive act as being more transitive than a transitive act which has not yet been completed. The meaning of the morpheme ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ -*nun* ~ -*nu* in an ergative sense is entirely a matter of highlighting the agentivity of an actant which, in most cases, happens to be the subject of the sentence. As in Dzongkha, the factors which induce the use of ergative case marking in Lepcha are volition on the part of the subject, the degree of control which the subject has over the event denoted by the verb, the animacy of the subject and the transitivity and completedness of the event denoted by the verb.

CHAPTER SIX

CLAUSE-FINAL PARTICLES, COORDINATION AND SUBORDINATION

Several clause-final particles are used in Lepcha to express the mood or emotional attitude of the speaker towards what he is saying. The clause-final interrogative particle $\overline{\text{g}}\text{ó}$ (Q) and the assertive particle $\overline{\text{m}}\text{a}$ (AST) have been discussed above in Sections 4.3.3 and 5.3 respectively. The adhortative function of the locative suffix $\overline{\text{c}}\text{i}$ *-ká* (LOC) when suffixed to a clause has been discussed in Sections 4.7 and 5.12. This chapter deals with several clause-final particles marking attitudes such as doubt, certainty, likelihood and discovery. This chapter also briefly discusses coordinating and subordinating conjunctions. Subordination of clauses by means of the factitive marker $\overline{\text{o}}\text{j}$ *-bú* (FCT) is a common phenomenon in Lepcha.

6.1 *The request particle*

The particle $\overline{\text{n}}\text{e}$ (REQ) expresses a polite request and is used when a person wishes to express reassurance towards the addressee or request the addressee to do something.

244 $\overline{\text{z}}\text{a}\overline{\text{b}}\text{a} \overline{\text{d}}\text{i} \overline{\text{n}}\text{e}$
 $\overline{\text{z}}\text{á}\overline{\text{b}}\text{á} \overline{\text{d}}\text{i} \quad \overline{\text{l}}\text{e}$
 here come REQ
 ‘Could you come here please.’

245 $\overline{\text{y}}\text{u}\overline{\text{p}}\overline{\text{t}}\overline{\text{h}}\overline{\text{e}}\overline{\text{n}} \overline{\text{k}}\overline{\text{á}}\overline{\text{t}} \overline{\text{s}}\overline{\text{o}}\overline{\text{m}} \overline{\text{l}}\overline{\text{e}}$
 $\overline{\text{y}}\overline{\text{u}}\overline{\text{p}}\overline{\text{t}}\overline{\text{h}}\overline{\text{e}}\overline{\text{n}}\text{-}\overline{\text{k}}\overline{\text{á}}\overline{\text{t}} \quad \overline{\text{s}}\overline{\text{o}}\overline{\text{m}} \quad \overline{\text{l}}\overline{\text{e}}$
 moment-one breathe REQ
 ‘Do catch your breath for a minute.’

6.2 *The authorative particle*

The particle ꠘ ce (AUTH) expresses authority on the part of the speaker and is used to request or urge the addressee to do something. The authorative particle may be related to the noun ꠘꠘ ꠘáce ‘love’.

- 246 ꠘꠘꠘ ꠘꠘꠘ ꠘꠘ ꠘ
ꠘábi thop pú dónɡ ce
 here get PSB search AUTH
 ‘You may find it over here, have a look.’

- 247 ꠘꠘꠘ ꠘꠘꠘ ꠘꠘ ꠘ
lín-bú ꠘáring nyen ce
 say-FCT language listen AUTH
 ‘Just listen to what is said.’

6.3 *The dubitative particle*

The clause-final particle ꠘ te , glossed as [DUB] for ‘dubitative’, indicates doubt, uncertainty or even confusion about the precise nature or result of an event. The context of example (248) is that the speaker is looking for something that the addressee put away. The speaker cannot find the object that he is looking for and rather than simply saying ꠘꠘ ꠘꠘ ꠘꠘ ꠘꠘ (*hó sabá tho hát* ‘where did you put it’), he stresses his uncertainty about being able to locate the object.

- 248 ꠘꠘ ꠘꠘ ꠘꠘ ꠘ
hó sabá tho-hát te
 2S where put-PRF DUB
 ‘But where did you put it?’

- 249 ꠘ ꠘ ꠘ ꠘ
go nóng khut te
 1S go be.able DUB
 ‘Could I perhaps go?’

- 250 ၵၵၵၵ ၵၵၵ ၵၵ ၵၵ^၃
lyángsóng sabá nóng te
 Lyángsóng where go DUB
 ‘Where did Lyángsóng go?’

6.4 The possibility particle

The clause-final particle ၵၵ *pú* (PSB) expresses a hypothetical possibility.

- 251 ၵၵၵၵ ၵၵၵ ၵၵ ၵၵ ၵၵ^၃
lyángsóng sabá nóng pú
 Lyángsóng where go PSB
 Where could Lyángsóng have gone?

- 252 ၵၵၵၵ ၵၵၵၵ ၵၵ ၵၵ ၵၵ ၵၵ ၵၵ^၃
saróng-re ၵádo-sá lyáng thít khut pú
 today-DEF 2S.OBL-GEN land reach be.able PSB
 ‘Today we might be able to reach your place.’

In example (249), the speaker expresses doubt or uncertainty in that he is unsure whether he himself would be the best person to undertake the journey or task. In (253), the speaker points out that he is a possible candidate for the job.

- 253 ၵၵ ၵၵ ၵၵ ၵၵ^၃
go nóng khut pú
 1S go be.able PSB
 ‘I could go.’

6.5 The inferential particle

Inference or assumption is expressed by the morpheme ၵၵ *lyók* [IFR], which can also be used as a main verb meaning ‘resemble, look like’, e.g. (257). When the speaker of example (254) noted that the addressee had only just come back after a long journey, she inferred that

the addressee was probably tired. The addressee did not look particularly tired, nor was there any other evidence for her assumption.

254 𐄀𐄁𐄂𐄃𐄄𐄅𐄆𐄇𐄈𐄉𐄊𐄋𐄌𐄍𐄎𐄏𐄐𐄑
hó saróng-do lát-nón-tho pá
 2S today-self return-RES-EXH CRT

𐄀𐄁𐄂𐄃𐄄𐄅𐄆𐄇𐄈𐄉𐄊𐄋𐄌𐄍𐄎𐄏𐄐𐄑
hó pel-nón lyók
 2S be.tired-RES IFR

‘You just came back today! You must be tired.’

255 𐄀𐄁𐄂𐄃𐄄𐄅𐄆𐄇𐄈𐄉𐄊𐄋𐄌𐄍𐄎𐄏𐄐𐄑𐄒𐄓𐄔𐄕𐄖𐄗𐄘𐄙
ʔádo-m lí lát-shang ʔákán
 2S.OBL-DAT house return-INF hurry

𐄀𐄁𐄂𐄃𐄄𐄅𐄆𐄇𐄈𐄉𐄊𐄋𐄌𐄍𐄎𐄏𐄐𐄑𐄒𐄓𐄔𐄕𐄖𐄗𐄘𐄙
ʔátím nyí lyók
 big be IFR

‘You’re probably in a hurry to get home.’

In example (255), literally ‘it looks like there is a great hurry to get home unto you’, the speaker assumes or infers that the addressee is likely to be in a great hurry. She could also have said *ʔádom lí látshang ʔákán ʔátím nyí*, ‘you are in a great hurry to get home’, but this would have been tantamount to accusing the addressee of behaving impolitely by being in such a hurry. By using the ending 𐄎𐄏 *lyók*, she is being polite, and the message she is conveying is something like: ‘You must be in a great hurry to get home, I can see that you would be, I can’t blame you, anyone would be in a hurry under these circumstances, there is nothing in your behaviour that shows it, but it is just something that is to be expected under these circumstances’.

The context of example (256) is that the speaker’s mother was away visiting friends in a neighbouring village. Since there had recently been a death in the family, the speaker thought it likely that his mother would return home as soon as possible.

- 256 $\text{kasu-sá} \quad \text{?ámú} \quad \text{lúk?ál} \quad \text{lát-sho} \quad \text{lyók}$
 1S.OBL-GEN mother tomorrow return-NPR IFR
 ‘My mother is probably coming back tomorrow.’

- 257 $\text{so} \quad \text{yu-sho} \quad \text{lyók-bám}$
 rain descend-NPR resemble-PRG
 ‘It looks like it’s going to rain.’

6.6 The certainty particle

The meaning of the particle pá (CRT) combines an element of direct perception or direct observation with an element of certainty. It describes a conviction on the part of the speaker with respect to the situation described. There is also an element of proof, direct observation or control. The information does not have to be new or unexpected, although it may be.

- 258 $\text{hík-nu} \quad \text{?átí} \quad \text{tho-hát} \quad \text{pá}$
 chicken-ABL egg put-PRF CRT
 ‘The chicken has [just] laid an egg.’

- 259 $\text{ríp} \quad \text{?áre-re} \quad \text{?ázuk} \quad \text{pá}$
 flower this-DEF pretty CRT
 ‘This flower is beautiful.’

In example (260), the speaker has observed that the man about whom he has been talking has aged a lot. He speaks about it with certainty and is trying to convince the addressee of this fact.

- 260 $\text{shúmú} \quad \text{?áre-re} \quad \text{gán-nón-tho} \quad \text{pá}$
 man this-DEF old-RES-EXH CRT
 ‘This man has become a lot older.’

6.7 *The discovery particle*

The particle $\tilde{\xi}\text{O}$ *yâmbá* (DSC) marks information that the speaker has come to know and consists of the inflected verb stem $\tilde{\xi}$ *yâm* of the verb ξ *yâ* ‘know’ and the postposition O *bá* ‘when’. The discovery marker $\tilde{\xi}\text{O}$ *yâmbá* may refer to all sorts of information that the speaker has come to know, whether acquired indirectly, through inference, based on direct evidence, by observable results or by general knowledge. There is also an extension of the meaning that could be called ‘mirative’. The particle $\tilde{\xi}\text{O}$ *yâmbá* may indicate that the situation denoted was contrary to expectation, though not necessarily sudden, arresting or surprising. Sentence (261) implies that the speaker has not seen the man in question for quite some time but that he has come to know that the man is quite old now.

- 261 $\text{shúmu} \quad \text{?áre-re} \quad \text{gán-nón-tho} \quad \text{yâmbá}$
 man this-DEF old-RES-EXH DSC
 ‘This man should be very old now.’

The context of example (262) is that the speaker went over to a certain place to find out what was happening to a friend who had been taken seriously ill. He then either heard or inferred that his friend had died. In example (263), the certainty particle ?á *pá* is used whereby the speaker points out that he has acquired direct and personal evidence for the described event. He may have entered the house only to find his friend had died, so that he practically witnessed the event. By virtue of its mirative sense, the marker $\tilde{\xi}\text{O}$ *yâmbá* is also employed to focus the listener’s attention to crucial points in a narrative.

- 262 $\text{go} \quad \text{nóng-bá-re} \quad \text{hu} \quad \text{mák-nón-tho} \quad \text{yâmbá}$
 1S go-when-DEF 3S die-RES-EXH DSC
 ‘When I went over there, I gathered that he had already died.’

- 263 ལོ་གོ་མཚམས་ལྟོགས་པའི་མཁའ་མཁའ་ལོ་ཤིང་།
 go nóng-bá-re hu mák-nón-tho pá
 1S go-when-DEF 3S die-RES-EXH CRT
 ‘When I went over there, it turned out that he was
 already dead.’

6.8 The reported speech particles

Something that was said by someone else may be marked by the phrase མཚམས་ལྟོགས་པའི་མཁའ་མཁའ་ *mere* (REP). This marker is used to indicate that the information did not come to the speaker’s knowledge through direct information or through inference, but rather by word of mouth. This particle is highly reminiscent of the Nepali reported speech particle *re* and the Limbu reported speech particle *mu*. The meaning expressed by this particle is not just a purely reportative marker, in that it adds a meaning of ‘s/he says’ to the reported information, as in ལྟོགས་པའི་མཚམས་ལྟོགས་པའི་མཁའ་མཁའ་ *shúshú mere* ‘what was that?’, ‘what did you just say?’. When a speaker chooses to use the reportative particle མཚམས་ལྟོགས་པའི་མཁའ་མཁའ་ *mere*, this highlights the fact that the information is based on something someone said, and there is an undertone that suggests that the speaker cannot necessarily vouch for the information or is unsure whether the information is necessarily accurate.

- 264 ལྟོགས་པའི་མཚམས་ལྟོགས་པའི་མཁའ་མཁའ་
 káyú lyáng lúk?ál zóm-ká
 1P land tomorrow food-LOC

 ལྟོགས་པའི་མཚམས་ལྟོགས་པའི་མཁའ་མཁའ་
 tú-tú lát-shet mere
 who-who return-NOM REP
 ‘Who did they say are coming back to dine with us
 tomorrow?’

- 265 རྩམས་པའི་མཚམས་ལྟོགས་པའི་མཁའ་མཁའ་
 ?áre-zang ?áshúm shúmú lá
 this-like fat man also

(ᄃᆞ ᄃᆞ ᆞ ᄃᆞ ᆞ
ʔore bun ma-khu-n mere
 that carry NEG-be.able-NEG REP

‘Such a heavy fellow, and yet he claims he cannot carry that load’.

The quotative particle *ᄃᆞ yang* ‘thus’ marks a direct quote. This particle is placed at the end of the quoted statement and often followed by a phrase such as *ᆞᆞᆞ ᆞᆞ ᆞ *hunu li ma** ‘s/he said’.

266 ᆞᆞᆞᆞ ᆞᆞᆞ ᄃᆞᆞ ᄃᆞ ᆞᆞᆞ ᆞᆞ
hudo-sá lí-re ʔábi yang hu-nun li
 3S.OBL-GEN house-DEF here thus 3S-ABL say

‘His house is here, he said.’

267 ᆞᆞᆞᆞ ᆞᆞᆞ ᆞ ᆞᆞᆞᆞ ᆞᆞᆞ ᄃᆞ
huyú-nu li-bá hu lúkʔál lát-sho yang
 3P-ABL say-when 3S tomorrow return-NPR thus

‘They said that he will return tomorrow.’

268 ᆞᆞᆞᆞ ᆞᆞᆞ ᆞᆞᆞ ᄃᆞᆞ ᆞᆞᆞ ᆞᆞᆞᆞᆞ
hu-nun huyú-m kasu ʔámlem ʔík sathála
 3S-ABL 3P-DAT 1S.OBL face still always

ᆞᆞᆞᆞ ᄃᆞ ᆞᆞ ᆞ
ma-ngâk-ne yang li ma
 NEG-look-NEG thus say AST

‘He said that they had never seen my face before.’

6.9 Coordination

The coordinative suffix *ᆞᆞ ʔân* ‘and’ coordinates arguments. This suffix connects two or more elements of a sentence, such as noun phrases, verb phrases or independent clauses.

- 269 ཟུང་ལོ་མོ་ མི་ རྩོམ་ ལོ་མོ་
punzók thám câng ?ân lí thám câng
 forest animal and house animal
 མ་དུ་མ་
ma-dúk-ne
 NEG-be.alike-NEG
 ‘The animals in the forest and the animals in the house are not alike.’
- 270 འདྲེན་ ལོ་ཀ་ འོ་ མ་ མི་ ལོ་ རྩོམ་ ལོ་ མ་
dorji lí-ká nóng ma ?ân go ?ábá lát ma
 Dorji house-LOC go AST and 1S here return AST
 ‘Dorji went home and I came back here.’
- 271 འོ་ རྩོམ་ འགྲུ་ མི་ ལོ་
hó ?ábá hro ?ân go
 2S here come.up and 1S
 རྩོམ་ འགྲུ་ འགྲུ་
?ádo-m róng-díng-sho
 2S.OBL-DAT wait-stand-NPR
 ‘You climb up there and I will stand here and wait for you.’
- 272 ལྷོ་མོ་ མི་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ ལོ་ མི་ ལོ་
nyíma ?ân kúrsóng faleng ?ân
 Nyima and Kursóng young.boy and
 ལོ་ལོ་ ལོ་
nómleng gum
 young.girl be.AST
 ‘Nyima and Kursóng are a boy and a girl.’

The alternative conjunction འཇུ་ *yángne* ‘or, either’ indicates that an alternative exists, e.g. (273). In the sense of ‘either ... or ...’, the

conjunction ຍາງເນ *yángne* ‘or, either’ precedes both the first and the second alternative, e.g. (274).

- 273 ກັ ຍາງເນ ວ ນ້ງເນ
hó yángne go nóng gát-sho
 2S or 1S go must-NPR
 ‘You or I will have to go.’

- 274 ກັ ຍາງເນ ງາ ຍາງເນ ງາ ລຳ
hó yángne ?áre yángne ?ore lyâ
 2S or this or that accept
 ‘You’ll have to accept either this or that.’

The adversative conjunction ສຸນລາ *shenlá* ‘but’ expresses a contrast or opposition of some kind between two propositions.

- 275 ສຸມເກັ ງາດອມ ທຸມເກັ ທີເວມ
shumu-kát ?ádo-m tsum-ká thi-wám
 man-one 2S.OBL-DAT meet-LOC reach-PRG

ສຸນລາ ວ ທີ ສຸນ
shenlá go thyák ma-tho-n
 but 1S recognise NEG-EXH-NEG

‘Somebody has come to see you, but I did not recognise him.’

- 276 ສຸດຸມເກັ ນຶເທບູ ຮ່ງເກັ ຮ່ງເກັ ສາບາລາ
sukdum-ká nyí-tho-bú róng-kyóng sabálá
 world-LOC be-EXH-FCT Lepcha-village everywhere

ເກຍູນຸນ ງາ ສີ ສາ ສຸນລາ
káyú-nun ?ore shi ma-thop-ne shenlá
 1P-ABL this see NEG-get-NEG but

ງາຮ່ງ ຮ່ງເກັ ງາ ສີ ສາ
?ore-zang ?álong ?ábá káyú-nun shím-thop
 this-like now here 1P-ABL see-get

‘In all the Lepcha villages in the world we don’t find any, but if we look around over here we will find some.’

6.10 Subordination

Subordinating conjunctions introduce dependent clauses and indicate the nature of the relationship between the independent clause and the dependent clause. The conditional conjunction ལ་ *gang* ‘if’ is added to the clause specifying the condition.

277 ལ་ རུ་ལཱ་ རྩོམ་ ལ་ རུ་ལཱ་ རྩོམ་ རྩོམ་
go རུ་ལཱ་-*zang* རྩོམ་ *gang* རུ་ལཱ་ལཱ་ *ngún-sho-bú*
 1S this-like make if good become-NPR-FCT

‘If I do it like this, will that be all right?’

278 རྩོམ་ རྩོམ་ ལ་ ལ་ རྩོམ་ རྩོམ་
yâ ལ་-*yâ-ne* *gang* ལ་-*nun* ལ་-*lí-n*
 know NEG-know-NEG if 1S-ABL NEG-say-NEG

‘Whether I know it or not, I am not going to tell.’

279 ལ་ རྩོམ་ ལ་ ལ་ རྩོམ་
kányí-m *vyet* *gang* *shú* *lí-shang*
 1D-DAT ask if what say-INF

‘If they ask us, what are we going to say?’

280 ལ་ རྩོམ་ ལ་ ལ་
món རུ་ལཱ་ *zo* *gang*
 medicine this eat if

ལ་ ལ་ ལ་ ལ་
hó *lúk?ál* *trókchi* *lyók*
 2S tomorrow be.thankful IFR

‘If you take this medicine, you’ll thank me in the morning.’

When the conditional conjunction ᠬᠠᠭ *gang* is combined with the morpheme ᠯᠠ *lá* ‘also, even’, the combination expresses the meaning ‘even if’.

- 281 $\text{ᠬᠣ ᠬᠢᠷᠣᠭᠤᠯᠠ ᠶ᠋ᠠᠨ ᠮᠠᠯᠠᠭᠤᠨ ᠭᠠᠩᠯᠠ}$
hó hryóp-pung ṽân mák-kung gang-lá
 2S cry-PTC and die-PTC if-also

$\text{ᠲᠠᠯᠢᠭᠤ ᠶᠠᠷᠢ ᠮᠠᠲᠤᠬᠤᠯᠠᠨᠢ}$
talṽyu ṽáre ma-thop-ne
 girl this NEG-get-NEG

‘Even if you cry or die, you won’t get this girl.’

Another subordinating conjunction is the concessive conjunction ᠭᠣᠷᠦᠩᠭᠤᠯᠠ *gorúnglá* ‘although, even’, which is added to the end of the concessive clause.

- 282 $\text{ᠭᠣᠨᠠ ᠭᠢᠨᠠ ᠰᠢᠭᠤᠯᠠ ᠭᠣᠷᠦᠩᠭᠤᠯᠠ}$
go-nu shúlá ma-mát-ne gorúnglá
 1S-ABL everything NEG-do-NEG even

ᠬᠤᠨᠠ ᠬᠠᠰᠤᠮᠤ ᠪᠤᠬ
hu-nu kasu-m buk
 3S-ABL 1S.OBL-DAT hit

‘Even though I did not do anything, he hit me.’

When the concessive conjunction is added to interrogative pronouns such as ᠰᠢ *tú* ‘who’, ᠰᠢ *shú* ‘what’, ᠰᠠᠷᠢ *sare* ‘which’, ᠰᠠᠪᠠ *sabá* ‘where’, ᠰᠠᠲᠢᠲᠢ *satet* ‘how much’, this process yields forms indicating any of all possible persons, things or places. This yields the forms ᠰᠢ ᠭᠣᠷᠦᠩᠭᠤᠯᠠ *tú gorúnglá* ‘whosoever’, ᠰᠢ ᠭᠣᠷᠦᠩᠭᠤᠯᠠ *shú gorúnglá* ‘whatsoever’, ᠰᠠᠷᠢ ᠭᠣᠷᠦᠩᠭᠤᠯᠠ *sare gorúnglá* ‘whichever’, ᠰᠠᠪᠠ ᠭᠣᠷᠦᠩᠭᠤᠯᠠ *sabá gorúnglá* ‘wheresoever, in any place whatsoever’. Similar expressions consist of the same interrogative pronouns combined with the phrase ᠭᠠᠩᠭᠠ *ganglá* ‘even if’, e.g. ᠰᠢ ᠭᠠᠩᠭᠠ *tú ganglá* ‘whoever’, ᠰᠢ ᠭᠠᠩᠭᠠ *shú ganglá* ‘whatever’, ᠰᠠᠷᠢ ᠭᠠᠩᠭᠠ *sare ganglá* ‘whichever’, ᠰᠠᠪᠠ ᠭᠠᠩᠭᠠ *sabá ganglá* ‘wherever’. As with the corresponding forms in ᠯᠠ *-lá* (cf. Section 4.3.3), forms in ᠭᠣᠷᠦᠩᠭᠤᠯᠠ *gorúnglá* can be used with a negative

verb to yield emphatic negative meanings such as ‘none whatsoever’, ‘nobody at all’, etc.

6.11 *The factitive marker*

The factitive marker འཇུག་-*bú* (FCT) is the most important nominaliser in Lepcha. The factitive marker འཇུག་-*bú* (FCT) nominalises verbs as well as clauses, and these nominalised constituents serve as adnominal attributes or as subordinated clauses. The meaning of the factitive marker འཇུག་-*bú* has been discussed in Section 5.10 and examples of the factitive marker used with numerals have been given in Section 4.11. When a nominalised verb or clause functions as a nominal head it can be pluralised and take case endings if the result is semantically plausible.

- 283 འཇུག་ལྷོ་འཇུག་ལྷོ་ འཇུག་ འཇུག་ འཇུག་
go-nu tasó zúk-tho-bú ʔyok shi-hát
 1S-ABL yesterday make-EXH-FCT work see-PRF
 ‘Did you see the work I did yesterday?’
- 284 འཇུག་ འཇུག་ འཇུག་ འཇུག་
bun ma-khut-ne-bú ʔádók
 carry NEG-be.able-NEG-FCT pain
 ‘unbearable pain’
- 285 འཇུག་ འཇུག་ འཇུག་ འཇུག་
ʔádo-nu pi-tho-bú yuk ʔáre-do gum
 2S.OBL-ABL write-EXH-FCT letter this-self be.AST
 ‘This is the letter you wrote.’
- 286 འཇུག་ འཇུག་ འཇུག་ འཇུག་
dok-bám-bú bík-re kúng sagrá-m-ká sám nyí
 be.ill-PRG-FCT cow-DEF tree below-LOC dwell be
 ‘The cow that’s ill is lying under the tree.’

287 ၵၵၵၵၵ (ၵၵၵ ၵၵၵၵၵ)
ʔotet-bek-ká yók-bík dók-bú-sang-nun
 that.much-middle-LOC yak-cow keep-FCT-PL.H-ABL

ၵၵၵၵၵ (ၵၵၵၵၵ ၵၵၵၵၵ)
ʔagyáp yók-bík-pang ryák-lung
 much yak-cow-PL.NH follow-GER

ၵၵၵၵၵ (ၵၵၵၵၵၵၵ)
pe-zót-ká lúngdi-det-bám
 grass-graze-LOC bring-move-PRG

‘In the midst of all this, whilst the herders of the yaks and cows were chasing a lot of yaks and cows, he brought it to the pasture.’

(1) hán-mú-re go ʔáre múng me yang-sá
 (1) before-NOM-DEF 1S this devil that thus-GEN

ʔáring-re go chet bo-sho (2) káyú
 language-DEF 1S relate give-NPR (2) 1P

róng-nu-re múng me yang lín-bú-re káyú
 Lepcha-ABL-DEF devil that thus say-FCT-DEF 1P

muzu-ká thi zók dok káyú mák-re
 body-LOC reach strike be.ill 1P die-DEF

múng-re zo me li (3) shenlá múng
 devil-DEF eat that say (3) but devil

lín-bú káyú-sá ʔáring-re rangsâr-do-m
 say-FCT 1P-GEN language other-self-DAT

lá káyú múng yang li (4) hudo-sá shú
 also 1P devil thus say (4) 3S.OBL-GEN what

khut nyí-wám-bú hudo-sá hu fát-bá
 be.able be-PRG-FCT 3S.OBL-GEN 3S lose-when

fát khut-sho-bú shi-bá shi khut-sho-bú
 lose be.able-NPR-FCT see-when see be.able-NPR-FCT

ʔo-zang khut nyí-wám-bú hudo-m lá káyú
 that-like be.able be-PRG-FCT 3S.OBL-DAT also 1P

múng yang li-wám-bú (5) hlo-re hlo
 devil thus say-PRG-FCT (5) mountain-DEF mountain

múng-re múng hu hlo-ká bám-bú
 devil-DEF devil 3S mountain-LOC dwell-FCT

(6) hu múng go-nu-re hudo-m-re
 (6) 3S devil be-ABL-DEF 3S.OBL-DAT-DEF

hlomúng yang li-wám-bú (7) hlomúng-re
 mountain.devil thus say-PRG-FCT (7) mountain.devil-DEF

káyú róng-sang-dep-re nyákdo
 1P Lepcha-PL.H-with-DEF very

chóm-nu-bám (8) mung-sá sung ?ayá
 be.friendly-ABL-PRG (8) devil-GEN story past

ren-sang-nu dun-lung yu-tho nyí (9) ?acálá
 sir-PL.H-ABL tell-GER descend-EXH be (9) moreover

káyú támsángmú-sang-sá ?ágít-ká-re
 1P Támsángmú-PL.H-GEN tribe-LOC-DEF

hlomúng-re-dep-ká-re bri-tho-wung-sá
 mountain.devil-DEF-with-LOC-DEF marriage-EXH-PTC-GEN

lá ?áring nyí (10) kasu-sá cálong
 also language be (10) 1S.OBL-GEN just.now

go nám khá-sám-sá kati-fali-tháp-ká
 1S year score-three-with ten-four-put-LOC

nóng-det kasu-sá ?ábo ?ámú-nu
 go-move 1S.OBL-GEN father mother-ABL

dun-tho-bú (11) kasu-sá bojo
 tell-EXH-FCT (11) 1S.OBL-GEN grandfather

bojo-plang-sá bojo-sá lá ʔányú-do-m
 grandfather-on-GEN grandfather-GEN also aunt-self-DAT

hlomúng-nu lúgnóng-nu lúgnóng-nu-re
 mountain.devil-ABL take-ABL take-ABL-DEF

kúngbóng-ká thóm-bú (12) ʔámú-sá ʔálong
 tree.stump-LOC keep-FCT (12) mother-GEN now

taʔyukup kátʔáp-bú lúng-nu (13) hu-nu
 daughter alone-FCT take-ABL (13) 3S-ABL

lúgnóng-bá-re hlomúng-do-m ʔyok
 take-when-DEF mountain.devil-self-DAT work

khut-bá lá hu zúk-bú-sho mere (14) myók
 be.able-when also 3S do-FCT-NPR REP (14) son.in.law

ʔâ saróng kasu-sá lí zúk-shang
 hey today 1S.OBL-GEN house make-INF

nyí-wám káwodámpú lú-shang nyí-wám
 be-PRG wooden.pillar rise-INF be-PRG

myók-nu kám tyól gát me lí
 son.in.law-ABL little.bit friend must that say

gang hlomúng-nu thi-nu sonáp-do-ká
 if mountain.devil-ABL reach-ABL night-self-LOC

thi-nu káwodámpú lú-bi-sho mere
 come-ABL wooden.pillar rise-give-NPR REP

(15) myók ʔâ saróng kasu-sá ló-bú
 (15) son.in.law hey today 1S.OBL-GEN wage-FCT

nyí-wám kasu-m bi ʔázóm gát me li
 be-PRG 1S.OBL-DAT curry rice must that say

gang saka savíng shángdri-ká thík-nu tungvyeng-ká
 if deer stag twig-LOC tie-ABL door-LOC

thi-nu thík-tho bi-sho (16) me yang-sá
 reach-ABL tie-EXH give-NPR (16) that thus-GEN

sung káyú-sá ʔábo bojo-sang-nu ʔolom
 story 1P-GEN father grandfather-PL.H-ABL like.that

dun (17) shenlá taʔyukup ʔálong
 tell (17) but daughter now

hlomúng-nu lúngnóng-bú-ká ʔámú-re ʔálong
 mountain.devil-ABL take-FCT-LOC mother-DEF now

taʔyukup thál-thál tsum-ká nóng
 daughter up.above-up.above meet-LOC go

(18) lyáng-nu-re hlomúng-nu-re ʔore-zang
 (18) place-ABL-DEF mountain.devil-ABL-DEF that-like

ma-gát-ne-re hu-nu lát-nóng-nu-re
 NEG-must-NEG-DEF 3S-ABL return-go-ABL-DEF

taʔyukup-re-do-m kúngbóng-nu lúngnóng-nu
 daughter-DEF-self-DAT tree.stump-ABL take-ABL

laháp-ká tho (19) laháp-ká lá tsum-nóng-nu-re
 cave-LOC put (19) cave-LOC also meet-go-ABL-DEF

(20) ?obi-nu lá lúgnóng-nu hu-nu laháp
 (20) there-ABL also take-ABL 3S-ABL cave

?ánpur-ká nóng-tho-nu-re lang-sá lá
 opening-LOC go-put-ABL-DEF stone-GEN also

dáp-pung-sá sung (21) ?ân ?álong kasu-sá
 cover-PTC-GEN story (21) and now 1P-GEN

ta?yúkup-re mák-nón bá yang kajóm
 daughter-DEF die-RES when thus finger

tíng blá-di-nu hudo-sá gyó
 separate take-come-ABL 3S.OBL-GEN quarrel

zúk-kung-sá sung-pang káyú-sá thikúng
 make-PTC-GEN story-PL.NH 1P-GEN great.grandfather

?ábo-sang-nu ?olom káyú-m dun (22) nalón
 father-PL.H-ABL like.that 1P-DAT tell (22) last

kasu-sá bojo ?yáng bojo-do
 1S.OBL-GEN grandfather real grandfather-self

hudo ?ábryáng-re píngke (23) hudo-m lá nám
 3S.OBL name-DEF Píngke (23) 3S.OBL-DAT also year

kati-kaku-tháp-sá tatsât-ká hu nám ?otet
 ten-eight-put-GEN time-LOC 3S year that.much

thikúng-sá tatsât-ká hudo-m lá
 great.grandfather-GEN time-LOC 3S.OBL-DAT also

ʔáre hlomúng-nu lúngnóng-sá sung (24) lavo
 this mountain.devil-ABL take-GEN story (24) month

kakyók-ká dóng-bám dóng-bám-nu lá
 seven-LOC search-PRG search-PRG-ABL also

thop-pung-sá sung nyí (25) dóng-lung-bá-re kúng
 get-PTC-GEN story be (25) search-GER-when-DEF tree

ʔátímmú ʔáre samálkúng ʔátím-sá ʔyók-ká
 big this toon.tree big-GEN work-LOC

tabá ngán-nyí mere (26) ngán-nyí-bá-re
 up.there remain-be REP (26) remain-be-when-DEF

hudo-sá dumdem bám-bú dum-pang lá
 3S.OBL-GEN *dumdem* dwell-FCT clothes-PL.NH also

gun dumprá-pang lá gun hrík-nón-tho mere
 all *dumprá*-PL.NH also all tear-RES-EXH REP

(27) hudo-m-re tabá shúmú-sang róng-sang
 (27) 3S.OBL-DAT-DEF up.there man-PL.H Lepcha-PL.H

nóng-nu tabá-do tukpo-sá dám-nu hu-re
 go-ABL up.there-self rope-with tie-ABL 3S-DEF

tít-sho mere (28) tado numnu-zang-do-m
 flee-NPR REP (28) 3S.OBL brothers-like-self-DAT

shi bá hudo-m tsám-dám-nu tabá-nu
 see when 3S.OBL-DAT hold-tie-ABL up.there-ABL

mebá lá glet-nu lí-ká blá-thi-nu
 there.below also drop-ABL house-LOC take-reach-ABL

báhó-ká háp-nu (29) hudo-m-re
 storage-LOC shut-ABL (29) 3S.OBL-DAT-DEF

nám-sám-ká kátʔáp hu-re shúmú
 year-three-LOC alone 3S-DEF man

lá ngún mere hu mi ngâk ma-tho-n
 also become REP 3S fire see NEG-EXH-NEG

shúmú ngâk ma-tho-n ʔolom
 man see NEG-EXH-NEG like.that

báhó-ká háp-nu (30) hudo-m-re zo-re
 storage-LOC shut-ABL (30) 3S.OBL-DAT-DEF food-DEF

cukup ʔángpur-nu tháp-bi ʔâ zo
 little.bit opening-ABL put-give eh food

zo ʔân nalón cádá lá hryá-nu
 eat and last rest also pull-ABL

ʔúng shú bi thám-câng klánlá
 water what give animal resembling

(31) hudo-m-re ʔolom nám sám
 (31) 3S.OBL-DAT-DEF like.that year three

jú-wung-sá-re (32) nám-sam-nu-re hu cádá
 live-PTC-GEN-DEF (32) year-three-ABL-DEF 3S rest

lá jók-shang káyú shúmú-dep-ká lá
 also speak-INF 1P man-with-LOC also

chó-nu (33) bojo hu-re ?álong-re
 unite-ABL (33) grandfather 3S-DEF now-DEF

hu-nu bri mát-nu-re (34) káyú-sá
 3S-ABL marriage do-ABL-DEF (34) 1P-GEN

?ábo-sang gek-bú yang-sá sung ?olom
 father-PL.H be.born-FCT thus-GEN story like.that

nyí (35) ?áre hlomúng-sá sung
 be (35) this mountain.devil-GEN story

(36) hlomúng lín-bú-re sare-zang
 (36) mountain.devil say-FCT-DEF which-like

múng-sang go sákcíng tyól-nu míkdúm-sang
 devil-PL.H 1S think friend-ABL foreigner-PL.H

phíl-lyáng talyádâ phíl-nu shúmú-sang
 be.distant-land sea be.distant-ABL man-PL.H

hlomúng dóng-ká ?ábá-bá thi
 mountain.devil search-LOC here-when reach

sabá-sabá dóng (37) go sákcíng-bá-re
 where-where search (37) 1S think-when-DEF

dóng-bú-sang-nu róng-sang-do-m-re lúng-nu
 search-FCT-PL.H-ABL Lepcha-PL.H-self-DAT-DEF take-ABL

nóng go-re tsum khut-sho lyók nóng go
 go be-DEF meet be.able-NPR IFR go 1S

sákcíng (38) cálong cá dá sherbú-sang-do-m
 think (38) just.now just sleep Sherpa-PL.H-self-DAT

lúgnóng-nu-re cálong cá dá
take-ABL-DEF just.now just sleep

tsum ma-khu-n nóng ma-khu-n-bám
meet NEG-be.able-NEG go NEG-be.able-NEG-PRG

shenlá róng-sang-do-m lúng-ne nóng go-re
but Lepcha-PL.H-self-DAT take-ABL go be-DEF

tsum khut-sho lyók (39) shúmátnu go jen
meet can-NPR IFR (39) why be other

(40) róng-sang-dep-re róng-sang-nu lín-bú
(40) Lepcha-PL.H-together-DEF Lepcha-PL.H-ABL say-FCT

ʔáring lá hu thyo-wung-sá sung kám
language also 3S hear-PTC-GEN story little.bit

cá sung-nu-re káyú ʔolom kám
just story-ABL-DEF 1P like.that little.bit

yâ (41) káyú róng-sang-do-m-nu ʔolóm
know (41) 1P Lepcha-PL.H-self-DAT-ABL like.that

dóng-ká lúng-nóng go-re thop-sho lyók
search-LOC take-go be-DEF get-NPR IFR

(42) cálong-nu nám pacák khá-nyet-zang
(42) just.now-ABL year almost score-two-like

thák-nón (43) kasu lyáng-re sadermi
be.complete-RES (43) 1S.OBL land-DEF gun

nyí-wám-bú go-re ?olom punzók-ká saka
 be-PRG-FCT be-DEF like.that jungle-LOC deer

shú mân dryák-ká nong-bá (44) ?otshóng-re
 what meat pursue-LOC go-when (44) that.day-DEF

go ma-nóng kasu-sá tyól-re nóng-bú
 1S NEG-go 1S.OBL-GEN friend-DEF go-FCT

róng-do (45) hu-nu nóng-nu ?áre ?ore-zang
 Lepcha-self (45) 3S-ABL go-ABL this that-like

shúmú shi ?áre ?ore ?álong hlomúng pú
 man see this that now mountain.devil PSB

bá shi-wung pú shenlá pung-nu míl
 when see-PTC PSB but mound-ABL down

kát?áp shim-bú hu-nu pung-nu thál
 alone see-FCT 3S-ABL mound-ABL up.above

hu-nu shi ma-khu-n (46) ?áre shúmátnu
 3S-ABL see NEG-be.able-NEG (46) this why

go jen (47) ?álong langklyók-nu-re
 be other (47) now big.flat.stone-ABL-DEF

tyóng-hát-nu-re hu-nu pung-nu míl
 hide-PRF-ABL-DEF 3S-ABL mound-ABL down

shi-bá-re ?áthóng ?akâ-pang ?ámel ?átím
 see-when-DEF leg hand-PL.NH hair big

(48) lá salom mát-sho gang sakakup-kát
 (48) also how do-NPR if young.deer-one

hu 3S	tsám-tho-bú hold-EXH-FCT	sakakup-ká young.deer-LOC	hu-nu 3S-ABL	tsám-nu hold-ABL
jú-sang live-PL.H	tho put	(49) tho-bá-re (49) put-when-DEF	sonáp-fók night-throughout	
lík-nu call-ABL	sonáp-fók night-throughout	lík-nu call-ABL	(50) huyú-re (50) 3P-DEF	
dá-nyí-bá-re sleep-be-when-DEF	hlomúng-re mountain.devil-DEF	tahyut whistle	mát-nu do-ABL	
mát-lung do-GER	mát-lung do-GER	yu come	mere REP	ʔân and
yuptho-kát-ká-re moment-one-LOC-DEF	huyú 3P	bám-bú-sá dwell-FCT-GEN		
li-ká house-LOC	lóm-lung walk-GER	di come	mere REP	(51) di-bá-re (51) come-when-DEF
ʔotet-ká-re that.much-LOC-DEF	kasu-sá 1S.OBL-GEN	tyól friend	sherábú-nu-re hunter-ABL-DEF	
shi-wám-bú see-PRG-FCT	hudo-sá 3S.OBL-GEN	ʔothá-bá-re then-when-DEF		
ʔábong-ʔákâ-pang mouth-hand-PL.NH	gun all	lá also	hudo-sá 3S.OBL-GEN	ma-det-ne NEG-move-NEG
hu 3S	ʔolom like.that	ngún-nón-bú become-RES-FCT	bóng-nón-bú dumb-RES-FCT	

(52) ?ân hu nóng-lung-sá-re hu ?otet
 (52) and 3S go-GER-GEN-DEF 3S that.much

sáknón-re lát-nu-re (53) hu
 conciousness-DEF return-ABL-DEF (53) 3S

ro-nu-re ?ân sháng tháp-nu mi ?átim
 fear-ABL-DEF and firewood put-ABL fire big

ro-nu ?olom ngán-nu (54) muzu sonáp
 fear-ABL like.that remain-ABL (54) body night

tyât-nu-re (55) lúk?ál-zang-re sakakup-re
 cut.down-ABL-DEF (55) tomorrow-like-DEF small.deer-DEF

hu-re lyót-nu-re hu-re li-ká
 3S-DEF free-ABL-DEF 3S-DEF house-LOC

thi-wung-sá sung (56) hu-nu ?áthóng
 reach-PTC-GEN story (56) 3S-ABL leg

hudo-sá ?ámel muzu dyángpak-pang hu-nu
 3S.OBL-GEN hair body knee-PL.NH 3S-ABL

gun shím-bú (57) hlomúng-re ?ábá-do
 all see-FCT (57) mountain.devil-DEF there-self

lá nyí-wám pá yang hu-nu dun-bú (58) ?ân
 also be-PRG CRT thus 3S-ABL tell-FCT (58) and

nalón kasu-sá nyót pe kafer-lyáng-ká lá
 last 1S.OBL-GEN field that Kafer-land-LOC also

nyí-wám (59) go ?obá ?áre nyót-do-ká
 be-PRG (59) 1S there this field-self-LOC

nóng-bá-re go-when-DEF	ʔobá-sá there-GEN	sherabú hunter			
thikúng-kát-nu great.grandfather-one-ABL		li say	ʔábi here	sathang-nu tiger-ABL	bík cow
thá-nu-re chew-ABL-DEF	káyú 1P	sonáp-ká night-LOC	nóng-nu go-ABL		
sathang-do-m tiger-self-DAT	sót-shang kill-INF	róng-bá-re wait-when-DEF			
sonáp-phet-ká night-half-LOC	sukmut wind	di come	mere REP		
(60) tagrikup-re (60) boy-DEF	hu 3S	dá sleep	nyí be	tagrikup-re boy-DEF	
miktráp-nón asleep-RES	mere (61) REP	hu-re (61) 3S-DEF	sadermi gun	bu-nu carry-ABL	
ngán-nyí-bá-re remain-be-when-DEF	sukmut wind	ʔáhyâng cold	di come	mere REP	
(62) sukmut (62) wind	ʔáhyâng cold	di-nu come-ABL	yuptho-kát-ká moment-one-LOC		
kúng tree	ʔáalom like.this	phíl-lung be.distant-GER	phíl-lung be.distant-GER		
di come	mere REP	di come	mere REP	(63) hu-nu-re (63) 3S-ABL-DEF	dróp moment

ʔárum-do-nu shi-wám-bú yâmbá lávo lóng-ká
far-self-ABL see-PRG-FCT DSC moon bright-LOC

phíl-lúng di-bá-re kúng-len lá ʔátho
be.distant-GER come-when-DEF tree-than also height

shúmú-sá ʔápíl-zang hu-nu-re ʔolom shi-nu
man-GEN shadow-like 3S-ABL-DEF like.that see-ABL

(64) kúng phíl-lúng phíl-lúng hróng-nu
(64) tree be.distant-GER be.distant-GER come.up-ABL

hudo lem ma-dóng-ne-sá ʔápil kám
3S.OBL direction NEG-search-NEG-GEN shadow little.bit

phíl-lúng (65) hu thol ʔáre shángcóng-hlo
be.distant-GER (65) 3S near this Shángcóng.mountain

lín-bú kón ʔothá nóng-wúng-sá sung
say-FCT side up.there go-PTC-GEN story

hu-nu lá kasu-m dun (66) hu-nu lá
3S-ABL also 1S.OBL-DAT tell (66) 3S-ABL also

li thámçâng ʔáre-re ʔábá-pang lá nyí-wám
say animal this-DEF here-PL.NH also be-PRG

pá hu-nu lá kasu-m dun (67) káyú-re
CRT 3S-ABL also 1S.OBL-DAT say (67) 1P-DEF

hu ʔábá-pang lá bám (68) cálóng satet
3S here-PL.NH also dwell (68) just.now how.much

lá nyí-wám-yang-sá sákcíng-re kasu-sá
also be-PRG-thus-GEN think-DEF 1S.OBL-GEN

sâm-ká nyí-wám
 mind-LOC be-PRG

(1) First of all, I will tell you what we call a devil. (2) We Lepchas speak of a devil when our bodies have been struck by illness, when we die, we say that a devil has eaten us. (3) But there is also something else that we call a devil. (4) When something has the ability to do something, when something can make itself disappear, what we can see one moment, but can't see the next moment, we also call that a devil. (5) *Hlo* means mountain, *múng* means devil, it lives in the mountains. (6) It is a devil, so we call it devil of the mountains. (7) The Mountain Devil is very friendly to us Lepchas. (8) Our forefathers passed stories of the Mountain Devil on to us. (9) There is even talk about someone in our own clan, the Támsángmú, having once even been married to the Mountain Devil. (10) My parents told me this, I am 74 years old now. (11) My grandfather told me that my great-grandfather's own aunt was taken away by the Mountain Devil and held by it on a tree stump. (12) She was her mother's only daughter and she was taken away. (13) It is said that during the time that she was held captive by the Mountain Devil, it would do any work for them that it could. (14) "Hey, son-in-law, today there is some work to be done in my house. The wooden pillars have to be put up. Give us a hand." If they would say something like that, the Mountain Devil would come at night and put up the wooden pillars. (15) If they would say: "Hey, son-in-law, today a paid worker is coming, I need some rice and curry," it would catch a deer and a stag and tie these to the door. (16) My grandparents told us stories like that. (17) Yet, the Mountain Devil had taken away their daughter. So the mother went all the way up to see her daughter. (18) The Mountain Devil didn't want that. So it took the daughter away from the tree stump and put her in a cave. (19) She also went to the cave to see her daughter. (20) The story goes that it had taken her away from the cave into a tunnel and blocked the opening of the cave with a stone. "Now my daughter is dead," the mother said and took home the severed finger that she found there. (21) My father's forefathers told us these stories about quarrels with the Mountain Devil. (22) Later, my grandfather, my

own grandfather, his name was Pingke. (23) When he was 18 years old, that same year, he was taken away by this Mountain Devil. This is another story. (24) It is said that they searched and searched for seven months before he was found. (25) While they were searching, he is supposed to have been sitting on top of a very big tree, a toon tree. (26) He was sitting up there, and all of his clothes were torn to bits. (27) Some people, some Lepchas, climbed up there to tie a rope around him, but it is said that he got away. (28) But when he saw his own brothers climbing up there in order to tie him down, he climbed out of the tree and they took him home and locked him in the storage room. (29) He was all by himself for three years, then he became a human being again. He didn't see any fire. He didn't see any human being. He just stayed in the locked storage room. (30) He was given bits of food through an opening, he simply ate the food and slept, and, like an animal, he would jump at water or anything else that was given to him. (31) He lived like this for three years. (32) After three years of sleeping, he started speaking again and he was reunited with us. (33) My grandfather then got married. (34) That is the story of how my father and his siblings came to be born. (35) This is the story of the Mountain Devil. (36) I think that what we call the mountail-devil is the kind of devil that our friends, the foreigners from far away places, came looking for. They looked everywhere for it. (37) I think that, those who were looking for it, if they had just gone out together with some Lepchas, they might just have found it, that's what I think. (38) As it is, they only went looking for it with some Sherpas, and they haven't been able to find it, but if they had taken Lepchas along, they would probably have been able to. (39) Why is this so? (40) We know that there are rumours to the effect that it can understand some of the Lepcha language. (41) If they had taken us Lepchas along, they might have found it. (42) Now, this is a story of almost 40 years ago. (43) I owned a gun. So I went out to hunt for deer or any other meat in the forest. (44) That day I did not go, my friend went, he is also a Lepcha. (45) He went and then he saw something like a man, possibly the Mountain Devil, but, well, when he saw it, he could only see the lower half of it. He could not look up higher than that. (46) Why this is so? (47) Well, he hid himself behind a big flat stone, and when he looked down he saw big and hairy legs and hands. (48) And, as if it knew how to, it was holding a small deer, holding it and letting it live. (49) It held the deer and it cried all night long. It was crying all night

long. (50) When the others were all asleep, the Mountain Devil made a whistling sound and walked closer to them and nearly reached the house where everyone was staying. (51) When it came that close, and my friend the hunter saw it, his mouth and hands froze. He became like that, dumbfounded. (52) And just as it was leaving again, my friend came back to his senses. (53) He was afraid and put all the firewood together to make a big fire, he was afraid and stayed right there. (54) That night he held his body close to the ground, like a log. (55) The story is that by the next morning, he freed the small deer and went back home. (56) He had seen everything, the hair on its legs, its body, its knees. (57) He told us that the Mountain Devil was definitely out there. (58) And, later on, it was also hanging around in my fields up there in Kafer. (59) When I went to the fields there, one old hunter from around there said: "There is a tiger here that has eaten the cows. We went out in the night to kill the tiger, and when we were waiting, in the middle of the night there was a sudden wind." (60) "The boy was asleep, he had fallen asleep," he said. (61) He carried a gun and he was just sitting there, when there was a sudden cold wind, he said. (62) Just a moment after the cold wind, something like a tree was moving towards him from far far away, and it was coming closer, he said. (63) Far away in the moonlight, he could see something for a moment, far away but coming closer, something taller than the trees, with a shadow like a man's. (64) The far, far- away tree was coming closer to him, but it didn't look in his direction and went away again, still quite far away. (65) It went up there, near Shángcóng mountain, he told me. (66) He said that such an animal definitely still lives there, he told me. (67) Now we live there as well. (68) I have often thought that it is still there, that is what I think.

sacák-nu thá-shang tsám-bá-re saʔár-nu
leopard-ABL chew-INF hold-when-DEF goat-ABL

li-bá go ʔálong pát nóng-nu vóm
say-when 1S now Tibet go-ABL salt

thá-bú yu-nu kám ʔáshúm-sá thá
chew-FCT descend-ABL little.bit fat-GEN chew

le (4) cálong tá go vóm thá-ká
REQ (4) just.now up.there 1S salt chew-LOC

nóng-det ma li-nu lát-nóng ma yâmbá
go-move AST say-ABL return-go AST DSC

(5) lát-nón-nu lá yu-bá-re ʔálong vóm
(5) return-RES-ABL also descend-when-DEF now salt

thá-bú-nu chúl lá lyáng-ká lá
lick-FCT-ABL down.below also land-LOC also

yu-bá-re lóm-ká ʔálong sacák-nu
descend-when-DEF road-LOC now leopard-ABL

saróng kasu-m thá trát-shang go li-nu
today 1S.OBL-DAT chew tear-INF be say-ABL

hryóp-nu lá yu-bá-re saryók-re ʔobá
cry-ABL also descend-when-DEF jackal-DEF there

thyo dǐng yâmbá (6) ʔe ʔabi kasu-m
hear stand DSC (6) hey here 1S.OBL-DAT

blá-nu le ʔádo-sá-do-m zo-sho-bú
take-ABL REQ 2S.OBL-GEN-self-DAT eat-NPR-FCT

múng-re go tyu-bo-sho (7) ?o-nu-re
 devil-DEF 1S subdue-give-NPR (7) that-ABL-DEF

hudo-m saryók-do-m ?ácáng-ká kábu-nu
 2S.OBL-DAT jackal-self-DAT back-LOC carry-ABL

sa?ár-dep lá yu-bá-re sacák-re
 goat-together also descend-when-DEF leopard-DEF

hâng thá yang lóm-ká plâ-di
 grr chew thus road-LOC come.out-come

(8) plâ-di-bá-re cá thá-shang
 (8)come.out-come-when-DEF just chew-INF

mát-bá-re (9) hudo thangkú thóng
 do-when-DEF (9) 3S.OBL tobacco drink

thangkú-sá kol-kát bu-wám yâmbá
 tobacco-GEN box-one carry-PRG DSC

(10) ?o-re saryók-re-nu ?o-re
 (10) that-DEF jackal-DEF-ABL that-DEF

shól-tho-bá-nu ?áre sukdam-ká tyâng gun-sá
 scatter-EXH-when-ABL this world-LOC whole all-GEN

thám câng-sá tsum-re tshóng yâmbá
 animal-with meet-DEF complete DSC

(11) sacák tsum-re ma-tshóng yâmbá
 (11) leopard meet-DEF NEG-complete DSC

li bán yet-shang mát-bá-re sacák-re
 say after descend-INF do-when-DEF leopard-DEF

plâ-nu ʔân punzók-ká lá thít-nón
 come.out-ABL and forest-LOC also reach-RES

ʔân saʔár-re lá thór yâmbá
 and goat-DEF also escape DSC

(1) This is a story about how we used to go to Tibet to get salt. (2) Just one of the many stories about us Lepchas going to Tibet to get salt. (3) Once a leopard had captured a goat and wanted to eat it, and just when a jackal appeared on the road, the goat said: “I am on my way to Tibet to eat some salt, why don’t you eat me when I come back again, I will be a little fatter.” (4) “I am just on my way up there to eat some salt,” he said, and he resumed his journey. (5) When he was on his way back again, he said: “Today, now that I have eaten some salt, when I get down there again, the leopard will tear me to pieces and eat me,” and he had just started crying when he noticed that the jackal was standing in front of him and had heard what he said. (6) “Hey, let me take on the devil that wants to eat you, I will defeat him for you,” he said. (7) Then the jackal carried the goat on his back and they started climbing down, when, grrr, with a roaring sound, the leopard appeared on the road. (8) He came out of nowhere and stood there, his mouth watering. (9) The jackal carried a pack of smoking tobacco. (10) The jackal opened the pack, threw the tobacco around and said: “All the animals of the whole wide world end up like this.” (11) “You could be next,” and after he said this, he started to move closer to the leopard. The leopard rose and ran into the forest, and the goat escaped as well.

West.Bengal-sá	president	ngún-bú-sá		
West.Bengal-GEN	president	become-FCT-GEN		
tândók-nu	go-re	ʔáre	róng-sá	nahán
behalf-ABL	be-DEF	this	Lepcha-GEN	before
nahán-sá	ʔáring-pang-sá	ʔáring	kám	
before-GEN	language-PL.NH-GEN	language	little.bit	
nyen-shang	mát-nu	(3) ren-do-m	go	pano
listen-INF	do-ABL	(3) sir-self-DAT	1S	king
gyebú-ʔáchúk-sá	ʔáring	kát-nyet	vyet-shang	
Gyebú-great-GEN	language	one-two	ask-INF	
mát-nu	(4) saróng	ʔábi	thi	ngán
do-ABL	(4) today	here	reach	remain
				sir
d.t.támsáng	máyel.málúk-lyáng	nye-lyáng	lín-bú-re	
D.T.Támsáng	Máyel.Málúk-land	holy-land	say-FCT-DEF	
ʔáre-sá	tândók-re	shú	ngún	pú
this-GEN	behalf-DEF	what	become	PSB
(5) máyel.málúk-lyáng	lín-bú-re	renjóng-lyáng		
(5) Máyel.Málúk-land	say-FCT-DEF	Sikkim-land		
ʔílám-lyáng	kálenpúng-lyáng	dárjúlyáng-lyáng	gun-lá	
Ilám-land	Kalimpong-land	Darjeeling-land	all-also	
chó-nu-re	hudo-m-re	máyel.málúk-lyáng		
unite-ABL-DEF	3S.OBL-DAT-DEF	Máyel.Málúk-land		
yang	lín-bám-bú	(6) mútâncí	róngkup	rum-kup
thus	say-PRG-FCT	(6) Mútâncí	Lepcha	god-child

lín-bú-re ʔáre-sá tândók-re shú ngún pú
say-FCT-DEF this-GEN behalf-DEF what become PSB

(7) mútâncí róngkup-do-m-re rum-kup yang
(7) Mútâncí Lepcha-self-DAT-DEF god-child thus

lá li-bám-bú ʔore róng tyâng-nu-re
also say-PRG-FCT that Lepcha whole-ABL-DEF

róng-re ʔánáng ʔátsóng go-nu rum-kup
Lepcha-DEF straight pure be-ABL god-child

yang hudo-m li-bám-bú (8) ʔyá
thus 3S.OBL-DAT say-PRG-FCT (8) past

nám-ká-re cálong-sá dárjílíng-lyáng-do-m-re
year-LOC-DEF just.now-GEN Darjeeling-land-self-DAT-DEF

dárjúlyáng yang li-wám ʔáre-re dárjúlyáng
Dárjúlyáng thus say-PRG this-DEF Dárjúlyáng

lín-bú-re ʔáre-sá tóm-re shú ngún pú
say-FCT-DEF this-DEF speech-DEF what become PSB

(9) dárjúlyáng lín-bú-re máyel.lyáng
(9) Dárjúlyáng say-FCT-DEF Máyel.Lyáng

nye-máyel.lyáng ʔáre-sá lyáng-ká gun-len
holy-Máyel.Lyáng this-GEN land-LOC all-than

zúk-bú dá-nyí-bú lyáng go-nu-re
make-FCT rest-be-FCT land be-ABL-DEF

hudo-m-re dárjúlyáng lín-bú
3S.OBL-DAT.DEF Darjúlyáng say-FCT

(10) cálóng-sá kálenpúng-do-m-re ʔyá-re
 (10) just.now-GEN Kálenpúng-self-DAT-DEF past-DEF

kálenpúng yang li-wám-bá-re ʔo-sá
 Kálenpúng thus say-PRG-when-DEF that-GEN

tândók-re shú ngún pú (11) kálenpúng
 behalf-DEF what become PSB (11) Kálenpúng

lín-bú-re ʔábryáng thóm-bú-re cálóng
 say-FCT-DEF name put-FCT-DEF just.now

nalón go-sho (12) hán-re kálenpúng lá
 last be-NPR (12) before-DEF Kálenpúng also

máyel.málúk.lyáng-do go (13) kálenpúng
 Máyel.Málúk.Lyáng-self be (13) Kálenpúng

ʔábryáng-re gyebú-ʔáchúk-nu pano gyebú-ʔáchúk-nu
 name-DEF Gyebú-great-ABL king Gyebú-great-ABL

thóm-bú (14) hu-nu-re ʔábi ʔáre
 put-FCT (14) 3S-ABL-DEF here this

kálenpúng-lyáng-re purtám-sá halá lyáng
 Kalimpong-land-DEF flat.land-GEN cleared land

ʔáre-re gum (15) ʔáre-re purtám go-nu-re
 this-DEF be.AST (15) this-DEF flat.land be-ABL-DEF

róng-sang-do-m lá zúk-shang tândók-ká
 Lepcha-PL.H-self-DAT also make-INF behalf-LOC

ʔábi-re ká len lá zúm-sá tândók-ká
 this-DEF P1 gather also meet-GEN behalf-DEF

kálenpúng yang ʔábryáng bi-tho-bú
 Kálenpúng thus name give-EXH-FCT

(16) pano gyebú-ʔáchúk-re róng-sang-sá pano
 (16) king Gyebú-great-DEF Lepcha-PL.H-DEF king

gyebú-ʔáchúk-re hu-sá ʔábo-sá ʔábryáng-re
 Gyebú-great-DEF 3S-GEN father-GEN name-DEF

pano ʔáprázáp hu-sá tagrikup-sá yang li-bám
 king ʔÁprázáp 3S-GEN boy-GEN thus say-PRG

cho-ká lá ʔolom-do pi-tho (17) ʔáre
 book-LOC also like.that-self write-EXH (17) this

pano gyebú-ʔáchúk-sá ʔábryáng-sá tândók-re shú
 king Gyebú-great-GEN name-GEN behalf-DEF what

pú (18) gyebú-ʔáchúk-sá ʔábo-re ʔáprázáp-re
 PSB (18) Gyebú-great-GEN father-DEF ʔÁprázáp-DEF

thâng go-sho (19) ʔámú ʔáshekmít ʔábo
 true be-NPR (19) mother ʔÁshekmít father

ʔáprázáp-re thâng go-sho (20) ʔámú
 ʔÁprázáp-DEF true be-NPR (20) mother

ʔáshekmít ʔábo ʔáprázáp gyebú-ʔáchúk-sá ʔábo
 ʔÁshekmít father ʔÁprázáp Gyebú-great-GEN father

ʔámú hudo-sá ʔágyek lyáng-re lóngshól-lyáng-ká
 mother 3S.OBL-GEN birth land-DEF Lóngshól-land-LOC

go-sho be-NPR	(21)	gyebú-ʔáchúk-sá Gyebú-great-GEN	lyáng-re land-DEF		
gyebú-ʔáchúk-sá Gyebú-great-GEN		ʔábo-sá father-GEN	dri-re fort-DEF	lóngshól-lyáng Lóngshól-land	
gum be.AST	(22)	gyebú-ʔáchúk-re Gyebú-great-DEF	tagrikup boy	hu 3S	
kátʔáp-bú alone-FCT	(23)	hudo-sá 3S.OBL-GEN	ʔágyek-re birth-DEF	káyú 1P	róng Lepcha
ʔáfrón-ká-re number-LOC-DEF		món pig	nám year	már.lavo twelfth.month	tshâ date
kati.tarók.tháp sixteen		go-sho be-NPR	(24) ʔyá nám-ká (24) past year-LOC		
gyebú-ʔáchúk Gyebú-great		pano-nu-re king-ABL-DEF	ʔáre this		
kálenpúng-sá Kálenpúng-GEN		ʔápun near	pun-re near-DEF	ʔágyáp much	má secret
dri-pang fort-PL.NH		zúk-tho make-EXH	(25) li (25) house	ʔân and	dri-pang-re fort-PL.NH-DEF
cálóng-re just.now-DEF		sabá where	pú PSB	sabá where	mát lá do also
zúk-thóm make-EXH		pú PSB	ʔábryáng-re name-DEF	shú what	pú (26) káyú PSB (26) 1P
róng-sang-do-m-re Lepcha-PL.H-self-DAT-DEF			tá up.there	pâtmú Tibetan	

ʔárát-sang-nu káyú-m ma-ná-n
Tibet-PL.H-ABL 1P-DAT NEG-take-NEG

(27) tá-ká yang pro ʔárát-sang-nu
(27) up.there-LOC thus Bhutan Tibet-PL.H-ABL

ma-ná-n (28) tá-ká yang hu-nu-re
NEG-take-NEG (28) up.there-LOC thus 3S-ABL-DEF

fyenkyóp-shang tândók-ká ʔátháng ʔálgará-sá
fight-INF behalf-LOC this.up.there Álgará-GEN

ʔápín dâmsáng dri chó gúrúbáthán-sá
this.on.the.other.side Dâmsáng fort join Gorubathan-GEN

ʔátán dálíng dri ʔân ʔáfi róngnyú
short Dálíng fort and here Róngnyú

pun-ká rangsâr lín-bú zúk-tho
near-LOC other say-FCT make-EXH

dri (29) dri-pang ʔácálá káyú nóng-nu ngâk
fort (29) fort-PL.NH still 1P go-ABL look

gang shi pú ʔo dá-nyí-bú ʔá-sá
if see PSB that rest-be-FCT that-GEN

lang-sang-re (30) cálóng sǒngtet tá
stone-PL.H-DEF (30) just.now up.till up.there

nyí dá gun-len ʔázúk ʔátím dri-re
be rest all-than pretty big fort-DEF

dámsáng dri-sá dálíng dri (31) ?áre cálóng
 Dámsáng fort-and Dálíng fort (31) this just.now

lá káyú-nu nóng-nu ?á gyebú-?áchúk-nu
 also 1P-ABL go-ABL there Gyebú-great-ABL

zúk-tho-bú lang-pang káyú shím-tho
 make-EXH-FCT stone-PL.NH 1P see-EXH

(32) pano gyebú-?áchúk-do-m kálenpúng-ká ?ore
 (32) king Gyebú-great-self-DAT Kálenpúng-LOC that

?áthú renjóng-sá pano-nu-re nahán
 this.up.over.there Sikkim-GEN king-ABL-DEF before

chádóng fyenkyóp me li ?â fyenkyóp-bá-re
 battle fight that say and fight-when-DEF

shú ngún pú (33) pâtmú pano pâtmú-sang-nu
 what become PSB (33)Tibetan king Tibetan-PL.H-ABL

renjóng-lyáng-ká thi-nu-re róng-sang-do-m
 Sikkim-land-LOC reach-ABL-DEF Lepcha-PL.H-self-DAT

gun vík zúk-nu-re
 all soldier make-ABL-DEF

(34) othú-nu-re ?áre kálenpúng-lyáng-ká
 (34) that.up.over.there-ABL-DEF this Kálenpúng-land-LOC

fyenkyóp-bá-re gyebú-?áchúk-nu dryák-nu-re
 fight-when-DEF Gyebú-great-ABL chase-ABL-DEF

tábá pákyong renjóng-lyáng-sá
 up.there Pákyong Sikkim-land-GEN

pakyong-lyáng-ká nóng-nu ?obá sóngtet
Pakyong-land-LOC go-ABL there up.till

go-nu-re (35) ?obá pákyóng dri yang
be-ABL-DEF (35) there Pakyóng fort thus

lá zúk-tho-nyi (36) ?ân nalón-re
also make-EXH-be (36) and last-DEF

páro.penlóp páro-sá pano páro zóng pe
Paro.Pönlo Paro-GEN king Paro Dzong there

li-wám-bú-nu-re lá ladá kálenpúng-ká
say-PRG-FCT-ABL-DEF also also Kálenpúng-LOC

chádóng kyón me li gyebug-?áchúk-dep chádóng
battle suffer that say Gyebug-great-with battle

tsum me li ?ân huyú-dep-ká-re shú
meet that say and 3P-with-LOC-DEF what

ngún pú (37) pro-sá pano-nu-re
become PSB (37) Bhutan-GEN king-ABL-DEF

gyebug-?áchúk-dep-ká fyenkyóp-shang hudo-sá
Gyebug-great-with-LOC fight-INF 3S.OBL-GEN

vik-sang klóng ?ábá dálíng dri-ká
soldier-PL.H send there Dálíng fort-LOC

(38) di-nu-re huyú-sá fyen-re ?obi
(38) come-ABL-DEF 3P-GEN fight-DEF there

ngún pá (39) ?ochú di-nu-re
become CRT (39) that.down.there come-ABL-DEF

hu-nu-re fyen ma-kyóp-nu
 3S-ABL-DEF fight NEG-fight-ABL

gyebú-?áchúk-do-m-re yón-nu (40) ?álong
 Gyebú-great-self-DAT-DEF visit-ABL (40) now

káyú-re ?ádo-sá ?ámín bám-sho cí
 1P-DEF 2S.GEN under dwell-NPR cí

?ázom.?áthen bi-nu-re lúng shíng-nu-re
 foodstuff give-ABL-DEF leisure drunk-ABL-DEF

hudo-m sót-nu-re (41) kúzú-bóng-ká
 3S.OBL-DAT kill-ABL-DEF (41) nettle-base-LOC

vá-vú (42) kúzú-bóng-ká vá-tho-bá-re
 throw-tangle (42) nettle-base-LOC throw-EXH-when-DEF

món zo dóng-bú-nu-re gyebú-?áchúk
 medicine eat search-FCT-ABL-DEF Gyebú-great

chúk chúk gyebú-?áchúk chúk chúk li-nu
 chúk chúk Gyebú-great chúk chúk say-ABL

(43) gyebú-?áchúk-re lá shopdá-bá hu-nu-re
 (43) Gyebú-great-DEF also rejoin??-when 3S-ABL-DEF

pano-ká lát-nóng li-nu-re (44) vik-sang-nu
 king-LOC return-go say-ABL-DEF (44) soldier-PL.H-ABL

thi-nu cádi gyebú-?áchúk-do-m lá
 reach-ABL approach Gyebú-great-self-DAT also

sót shen hu-re ma-mák-ne-shum-bú
kill but 3S-DEF NEG-die-NEG-NPR-FCT

(45) hudo-sá gyebú-ʔáchúk-sá-do payúk-nu
(45) 3S.OBL-GEN Gyebú-great-GEN-self sword-ABL

ma-tyât-nu sangtyet hu
NEG-cut.down-NEG up.till 3S

ma-mák-nu-shum-bú ngún-nu-re (46) álóng
NEG-die-NEG-NPR-FCT become-ABL-DEF (46) now

gyebú-ʔáchúk-sá-do payúk-nu-do-nu
Gyebú-great-GEN-self sword-ABL-self-ABL

hudo-sá ʔáthyák tíng-bá-re hudo-sá
3S.OBL-GEN head divide-when-DEF 3S.OBL-GEN

ʔáthyák-re ʔáchú shel úngkyóng-ká nóng-nu
head-DEF this.down.there wet river-LOC go-ABL

ván nóng ʔáthyák ma-thop-nu-bú-sá sung
enter go head NEG-get-ABL-FCT-GEN story

(47) cálóng gun-lá-nu yâ-wám (48) ʔân pro
(47) just.now all-also-ABL know-PRG (48) and Bhutan

pano-sang-re ʔábá kálenpúng-ká lá
king-PL.H-DEF here Kálenpúng-LOC also

bám pú kríl lávúng-nón pú (49) nálón-re pro
dwell PSB dirty turn.back-RES PSB (49) last-DEF Bhutan

pano-nu-re gyebú-ʔáchúk-sá ʔáthyák tíng
king-ABL-DEF Gyebú-great-GEN head divide

blá-dí yang li-tho shenlá ?áthyák-re
take-come thus say-EXH but head-DEF

?ochú úngkyóng-ká nóng-nu bán
that.down.there river-LOC go-ABL after

nóng-sá-re ma-thop-nu-re (50) ?ore vík-sang
go-GEN-DEF NEG-get-ABL-DEF (50) that soldier-PL.H

chádóng-ká dít-bú vik-sang huyú-do-nu
battle-LOC come-FCT soldier-PL.H 3P-self-ABL

huyú-do lá só-t-nu huyú-do-nu huyú-do
3P-self also kill-ABL 3P-self-ABL 3P-self

mák-nu-re mebá lá ma-khu-n-sá
die-ABL-DEF there.below also NEG-be.able-NEG-GEN

sung ?olom nyí
story like.that be

(1) “Sir D.T. Támsáng used to be chairman of the local assembly of the Lepcha village Bám *basti* and he was also the *mandal* of the village.” (2) Sir, at the moment you are president of the Lepcha Association of West Bengal, on this behalf I have invited you here to ask you a few questions about some legendary stories.” (3) “Sir, I would like to ask you some questions about the story about king Gyebú ?Áchúk, the great king Gyebú.” (4) Whilst we are here, sir D.T. Támsáng, may I ask what is the meaning of the expression *Máyel Málúk Lyáng?* What is meant by this so-called ‘holy’ land?” (5) “What we call the land of *Máyel Málúk* is what we get when we combine all of the territory of Sikkim, Kalimpong, Darjeeling and Ilám. That is what we call the hidden paradise, *Máyel Málúk Lyáng.*” (6) “What does the expression *Mútâncí Róngkup Rumkup* mean?” (7) “The *Mútâncí Róngkup* are also called children of god or *Rumkup*, because all Lepcha

people are truly honest.” (8) “What we now know as Darjeeling was called *Darjúlyáng* in the past. What does that mean, *Darjúlyáng*?” (9) “*Dárjúlyáng* is the place where it is said that the gods rested after they had created the holy land of Máyel. They called it *Dárjúlyáng*, ‘Abode of Gods’.” (10) “What we now call *Kálenpúng* was also called *Kálenpúng* in the past. What is the meaning of this name?” (11) “The name *Kálenpúng* was only given recently. (12) In the old days *Kálenpúng* was just a part of the land of Máyel Málúk. (13) The name *Kálenpúng* was given by the great king Gyebé. (14) The area of *Kálenpúng* was flat and open. (15) Because of it being a flat area, the Lepcha people decided this was a place where we could all meet, and therefore they gave this place the name *Kálenpúng*, *ká* meaning ‘we’, *len* meaning ‘gather’ and *púng* referring to ‘place’. (16) The great king Gyebé, king Gyebé ʔÁchúk of the Lepcha people, his father’s name was king ʔÁprázáp, he is said to be his son, it is written in the old books.” (17) “What is the meaning of the name king Gyebé ʔÁchúk?” (18) “It is true that the king Gyebé ʔÁchúk’s father’s name was ʔÁprázáp. (19) “His mother’s name was ʔÁshekmít, his father’s name was ʔÁprázáp, this is the truth. (20) So, his mother was ʔÁshekmít and his father was ʔÁprázáp. The parents of the great Gyebé were born in a place called Longshol. (21) Gyebé ʔÁchúk’s father’s castle was in Longshol. (22) Gyebé ʔÁchúk was an only child. (23) According to the Lepcha calendar, he was born on the sixteenth day of the twelfth month in the year of the pig.” (24) “A long time ago, king Gyebé ʔÁchúk built many secret castles over here in the *Kálenpúng* area.” (25) “Those houses and castles, where were they built and what are they called?” (26) “We Lepcha’s did not take on those Tibetans from up there. (27) We did not take on those Bhutanese up there either. (28) In order to protect Álgará here from an attack, Gyebé ʔÁchúk is said to have built Dámsáng fort, near Gorubathan we have the Dálíng fort and near the Róngnyú river over here there is another fort. (29) If we go to the forts and look around, we can see that the ruins are still there. (30) Of all that remains, the most beautiful and largest forts are Dámsáng fort and Dálíng fort. (31) If we go all the way up there now, we can still see the stones that the great Gyebé put there.” (32) “In Kalimpong, king Gyebé ʔÁchúk is said to have fought a battle with the king from Sikkim, what was that about?” (33) “The Tibetan king and the Tibetans came to Sikkim and all the Lepcha people were made soldiers. (34) When they came from

all the way over there to fight here in Kalimpong, Gyebú ʔÁchúk chased them right back to Pakyóng in Sikkim. (35) He also built Pakyóng fort up there.” (36) “Later, the Paro Pönlo or ruler of Paro Dzong also said that he would challenge king Gyebú ʔÁchúk in Kalimpong to fight a battle, what happened between them?” (37) “In order to fight Gyebú ʔÁchúk, the Bhutanese king sent his soldiers up to Dáling fort. (38) When they arrived there, there was a battle there. (39) When they came down there, at first they didn’t fight and Gyebú ʔÁchúk visited them. (40) They claimed that they would live under his rule and they gave him all sorts of food and drink. When they were having a good time, when they were getting drunk, they killed him. (41) They threw him into the nettle bushes. (42) When they had thrown him into the nettle bushes, someone came over there looking for herbs, and the great Gyebú was saying “Gyebú ʔÁchúk chúk chúk, Gyebú ʔÁchúk chúk chúk.” (43) Gyebú ʔÁchúk’s body had joined back together and they went back to the king and said that Gyebú ʔÁchúk had returned. (44) The soldiers went back to kill Gyebú ʔÁchúk again, but he was immortal. (45) Even when their swords were worn down from fighting, Gyebú ʔÁchúk still could not be killed. (46) Now the story is that when they cut Gyebú ʔÁchúk with his own sword, his head fell into the river below and they couldn’t find his head anymore. (47) Everybody knows this now.” (48) “And the king of Bhutan and his men, did they stay here in Kalimpong or did they go back home?” (49) “After they killed Gyebú ʔÁchúk, the king of Bhutan said: “Now you have to bring me the severed head of Gyebú ʔÁchúk”, but they couldn’t find the head when they went down to the river. (50) Because of this, those soldiers fought the other soldiers and they killed each other and everybody died there, this is the story.”

(1) khámrimó khámrí ?álem-do di le ?íng (2) khámrí
 (1) khámrimó khámrí hither-self come REQ child (2) khámrí

?ánóm khámrimó ?ánóm (3) saróng káyú kyóng-sá
 elder.sister khámrimó elder.sister (3) today 1P village-GEN

?áring kát-nyet li-ká le ?íng-do-m
 language one-two say-LOC REQ child-self-DAT

tsum-bá (4) shú ?áring línshet nyí gó ?ánóm
 meet-when (4) what language speech be Q elder.sister

(5) káyú-sá kyóng-sá shezúm-re salom
 (5) 1P-GEN village-GEN association-DEF how

ngún-det-bám (6) káyú-sá kyóng shezúm
 become-move-PRG (6) 1P-GEN village association

salom mát-shang ?ánúm-sang-do tsum ma-tho-n
 how do-INF elder.brother-PL.H-self meet NEG-EXH-NEG

(7) tsum ma-gát ?ákâ ?álong káyú-do zúk-ká
 (7) meet NEG-must hand now 1P-self make-LOC

(8) ?olom gangne ?álong ?ánóm-do yâ ma
 (8) like.that if now elder.sister-self know AST

(9) trúť mát-ká le káyú suknyím-kát káyú
 (9) advise do-LOC REQ 1P day-one 1P

kyóng-sá gun-re-m lík-bán trúť mát-ká
 village-GEN all-DEF-DAT call-after advise do-LOC

- (10) ngún ʔánóm ʔolom gangne (11) sathá
 (10) become elder.sister like.that if (11) when
- lík-shang (12) tshâ-kati-ká lík gát-sho lyók
 call-INF (12) date-ten-LOC call must-NPR IFR
- (13) go lúkhróng-re lúng-sho lyók-ʔám
 (13) 1S morning-DEF be.free-NPR IFR-PRG
- (14) tshâ-kati-ká-do tho-ká (15) ngún
 (14) date-ten-LOC-self put-LOC (15) become
- (16) káyú róngkup-sang-re-m salom mát-shang
 (16) 1P Lepcha-PL.H-DEF-DAT how do-INF
- (17) go lá shúlá lín ma-khu-n ma-yâ-n
 (17) 1S also nothing say NEG-be.able-NEG NEG-know-NEG
- ʔánóm (18) thál lúngtár-shang-sá sung-kát-sá
 elder.sister (18) up.above develop-INF-GEN story-one-GEN
- lá ma-nyí-n (19) linko-do ʔánóm ʔánóm
 also NEG-be-NEG (19) talk-self elder.sister elder.sister
- róngkup-sá vi-do ma-nyí-n lyók
 Lepcha-GEN blood-self NEG-be-NEG IFR
- (20) vi shúmátne ma-nyí-n káyú ryótkup
 (20) blood why NEG-be-NEG 1P orphan
- ma-go-n káyú-sá pano nyí (21) pano-sá
 NEG-be-NEG 1P-GEN king be (21) king-GEN
- ʔábryáng-re shú ngún pú kasu-m-nu
 name-DEF what become PSB 1S.OBL-DAT-ABL

ʔore ma-yâ-n (22) hó gebú.ʔáchúk
 that NEG-know-NEG (22) 2S Gebú.ʔÁchúk

thyák ma-tho-ne (23) go thyák
 recognise NEG-EXH-NEG (23) 1S recognise

ma-tho-n-ʔám (24) gebú.ʔáchúk-sá ʔábo-sá
 NEG-EXH-NEG-PRG (24) Gebú.ʔÁchúk-GEN father-GEN

ʔábryáng ʔáprázáp ʔámú-sá ʔáshekmít
 name ʔÁprázáp mother-GEN ʔÁshekmít

ʔáshekmít-sá tagrikup-re gebú.ʔáchúk go ma
 ʔÁshekmít-GEN boy-DEF Gebú.ʔÁchúk be AST

(25) ʔe (26) hó-nu dálíng dri kor-tho
 (25) ah (26) 2S-ABL Dálíng fort wander-EXH

(27) go kor ma-tho-n ʔánóm
 (27) 1S wander NEG-EXH-NEG elder.sister

(28) dámsáng dri kor-tho (29) go sabálá
 (28) Dámsáng fort wander-EXH (29) 1S everywhere

nóng ma-tho-n ʔácá (30) káyú-do
 go NEG-EXH-NEG still (30) 1P-self

dabling-kyóng-ká-lá gebú.ʔáchúk-sá dri nyí-ʔám
 Dabling-village-LOC-also Gebú.ʔÁchúk-GEN fort be-PRG

(31) sabá-do (32) sagór-ká ʔún-thík-lyáng
 (31) where-self (32) rock-LOC horse-tie-place

(33) ʔánóm hó kor hát-tho (34) go kor
 (33) elder.sister 2S wander lose-EXH (34) 1S wander

(35) go nóg ma-tho-n ʔobála (36) kám
 (35) 1S go NEG-EXH-NEG everywhere (36) little.bit

kor-shang lá mát le hó kyóng-ká
 wander-INF also do REQ 2S village-LOC

(37) ʔálong go kor-sho ʔánóm
 (37) now 1S wander-NPR elder.sister

(38) kyóng-kyóng-ká shú ngún-bám kám ngâk
 (38) village-village-LOC what become-PRG little.bit see

gát káyú (39) ʔálong-re-nu go kor-sho
 must 1P (39) now-DEF-ABL 1S wander-NPR

ʔánóm (40) róngkup-sang-sá trút-re gun cá
 elder.sister (40) Lepcha-PL.H-GEN advise-DEF all just

katʔáp ngún gát (41) káflik-nu zúk-shang káflik-nu
 alone become must (41) some-ABL make-INF some-ABL

ma-zúk-shang ʔolom sákcing ma-ngún kát-nu
 NEG-make-INF like.that think NEG-become one-ABL

ʔáthong hrúp gang gun-nu hrúp gát
 leg pick.up if all-ABL pick.up must

(42) ʔánóm go ma-khu-n-sho lyók-ʔám
 (42) elder.sister 1S NEG-be.able-NEG-NPR IFR-PRG

(43) hó ma-khu-n li-nu ma-ngún
 (43) 2S NEG-be.able-NEG say-ABL NEG-become

(44) hó róng yángne lúmкуп (45) go róng go
 (44) 2S Lepcha or Nepali (45) 1S Lepcha be

róngкуп-do (46) ?ádo-sá kúmíng shú
 Lepcha-self (46) 2S-GEN appellation what

(47) kasu-sá ?á?itámít róngкуп
 (47) 1S.OBL-GEN ?Á?itámít Lepcha

(48) hó róngкуп shúmatne pi róngкуп ma-go-n gang
 (48) 2S Lepcha why write Lepcha NEG-be-NEG if

(49) ?ánóm-sá kúmíng shú gó
 (49) elder.sister-GEN appellation what Q

(50) kasu-sá ?óngmít róngкуп
 (50) 1S.OBL-GEN ?Óngmít Lepcha

(51) ?ánóm-sá kúmíng go saróng-do thyo-ma
 (51) elder.sister-GEN appellation 1S today-self hear-AST

(52) hó-nu kasu-sá kúmíng saróng-do yâm-bú
 (52) 2S-ABL 1S.OBL-GEN appellation today-self know-FCT

hó ?ácálá gek gát róng máyel sukdam-ká
 2S still be.born must Lepcha Máyel world-LOC

(53) káyú ?álong ?áлом bám-nu ma-ngún
 (53) 1P now like.that reside-ABL NEG-become

(54) kyóng-ká ngâk gát róngкуп-sang sabá-sabá
 (54) village-LOC look must Lepcha-PL.H where-where

tsóm-?ám sabá brám-?ám (55) ?álong hó go
 limit-PRG where stray-PRG (55) now 2S 1S

ma-yâ-n li-nu ma-lí-n (56) káyú
 NEG-know-NEG say-ABL NEG-say-NEG (56) 1P

kor-nu lóm-nu róngkup-sá sáktsum tyâng-sá
 wander-ABL walk-ABL Lepcha-GEN thought whole-GEN

thyák-ká ?ámú-sá dúnggít-lá tsum-ká
 recognise-LOC mother-GEN tradition-also meet-LOC

?ábryáng ma-kyól-ne-ká (57) káyú róngkup-re
 name NEG-blend-NEG-LOC (57) 1P Lepcha-DEF

sabá-nu ?ít (58) cú-nu (59) hó
 where-ABL create (58) mountain.peak-ABL (59) 2S

thyák-?ám (60) ?ore go ?ámú-bo-nu
 recognise-PRG (60) that 1S mother-father-ABL

kám-kám dun-?ám-tho-nu li-ma
 little.bit-little.bit tell-PRG-EXH-ABL say-AST

(61) káyú róngkup-sá tân-ká álom zúk-nu
 (61) 1P Lepcha-GEN behalf-LOC like.this make-ABL

?áryúm ngún-nu (62) káyú tyâng gun kyóng-ká
 good become-ABL (62) 1P whole all village-LOC

kor-ká (63) ngún ?ánóm kor-ká ?álong
 wander-LOC (63) become elder.sister wander-LOC now

(1) “Khámrimó, khámri, please come over here for a minute, sister.”
 (2) “Khámri, sister, khámrimó, sister.” (3) “Since we’re here now,
 let’s talk about our village for a bit.” (4) “What’s on your mind, sis-
 ter?” (5) “How is our village association coming along? (6) “How is
 our village association coming along? We’ve still not met up with our

brothers.” (7) “We don’t have to get together with them, let’s arrange things ourselves.” (8) “Well, we could, I suppose, you do know about such things.” (9) “Let’s set up a meeting and get the whole village together to discuss things.” (10) “All right sister, let’s do that.” (11) “When shall we have the meeting?” (12) “We should probably have it on the tenth.” (13) “I will be free that morning.” (14) “Let’s set it for the tenth then.” (15) “All right.” (16) “What can we do for our Lepcha people?” (17) “I really couldn’t say, sister, I don’t know.” (18) “I don’t really know any success stories.” (19) “That’s right sister, it’s almost as if there is no Lepcha spirit anymore.” (20) “Why do you put it like that? It’s not as if we are orphans, after all we have a king.” (21) “And what is the name of this king? I don’t know it.” (22) “Do you not know king Gebú ṽÁchúk?” (23) “I don’t.” (24) “Gebú ṽÁchúk’s father’s name is ṽAprázáp, his mother’s name is ṽÁshekmít, so ṽÁshekmít’s son is Gebú ṽÁchúk.” (25) “I see.” (26) “Have you been to Dálíng fort?” (27) “I haven’t been there, sister.” (28) “Have you been to Dámsáng fort?” (28) “I’ve not been anywhere yet.” (30) “Here in our village, in Dabling, there is also a fort of Gebú ṽÁchúk’s.” (31) “But where?” (32) “By the rocks, where they tie up the horses.” (33) “Have you been there, sister?” (34) “I have.” (35) “I have not been to any of these places.” (36) “You should walk around a bit more in our village.” (37) “Let’s do that right now, sister.” (38) “We should to go to all the villages to see what is going on.” (39) “I’ll go and look around right away, sister.” (40) “When we have the meeting with all the Lepcha people, all of us have to become as one. (41) Some of us are doing things, others are not doing anything. We should not think this way. If one of us makes an effort, we should all join in.” (42) “I don’t think I will be able to do anything much, sister.” (43) “It’s not right to say that you can’t do anything. (44) Are you Lepcha or Nepali?” (45) “I am Lepcha, of course.” (46) “What is your name?” (47) “It is ṽÁṽitámít Lepcha.” (48) “Why do you call yourself Lepcha when you are not truly a Lepcha?” (49) “What is your name, sister?” (50) “Mine is ṽÓngmít Lepcha.” (51) “I had not heard your name before, sister.” (52) “You’ve only just learnt my name? You must feel as if you are reborn into the Lepcha Máyel world. (53) The way we’re living isn’t right. (54) We should look around the villages to see where all the Lepcha people are and find out if they are feeling lost. (55) From now on, you shouldn’t say “I don’t know”, anymore. (56) Let’s walk around, so that we become

aware of all the thoughts of the Lepcha people and of the traditions of our parents, let's not get the names of things mixed up again. (57) Where do we Lepcha originally come from?" (58) "From the snowy peaks." (59) "You know it already!" (60) "I only said that because my parents told me a little bit about it." (61) "It would be good if we did things like that for the benefit of the Lepcha people as well." (62) "Let's walk over to all the villages." (63) "Yes, sister, let's do that straight away."

GLOSSARY

This glossary lists the Lepcha words used in examples and texts in this grammar. The entries are listed by their initial consonants, according to the following order: ཅ k, ཆ kh, ཇ kr, ཈ kl, ཉ g, ཊ gl, ཋ ng, ཌ c, ཌྷ ch, ཎ j, ཏ ny, ཐ t, ད tr, དྷ th, ན thr, པ d, ཕ dr, བ n, བྷ p, མ pl, ཙ ph, ཚ f, ཛ fl, ཛྷ b, ཝ bl, ཞ m, ཟ ml, འ ts, ཡ tsh, ར z, ལ y, ཥ r, ས l, ས h, ཮ hl, ཯ v, ཰ sh, ི s, ཱི w, ུ ? , ཱུ -â, ྲྀ -a, ཷ -i, ླྀ -í, ཹ -o, ེ -ó, ཻ -u, ོ -ú, ཽ -e, ཿ -y-.

ཅ k-

- ཅྱ *kâ* v. cook
- ཅྲ *kât* v. order, command
- ཅླ *kaku* num. eight
- ཅྴ *kakyók* num. seven
- ཅྵ *kakyót* num. nine
- ཅྶ *kacer* n. wheat
- ཅྷ *kajóm* n. finger
- ཅྸ *kajú* n. dog
- ཅྐྵ *kajútâng* n. fat male dog
- ཅྺ *katáp* n. fist
- ཅྻ *kati* num. ten
- ཅྼ *katyám* n. muscle of the arm
- ཅ྽ *kathi* n. little finger
- ཅ྾ *kadóm* n. thumb
- ཅ྿ *kábu* v. carry
- ཅྺྱ *katshóng* adv. day after tomorrow
- ཅྺྲ *kayók* n. fingertip
- ཅྺླ *kayóng* n. middle finger
- ཅྺྴ *kalít* n. ring finger
- ཅྺྵ *kalók* n. rat, mouse
- ཅྺྶ *kalyók* n. palm of hand
- ཅྺྷ *káchám* adv. in three days time, after three days

- 𐄂𐄃 *káchót* adv. in four days time, after four days
 𐄂𐄄𐄅 *kátaʔyen* adv. three years ago
 𐄂𐄆𐄇 *káflík* adj. some
 𐄂𐄈𐄉𐄊 *káwodámpú* n. wooden pillar
 𐄂𐄋 *kát* num. one
 𐄂𐄌 ~ 𐄂𐄍(𐄎) ~ 𐄂𐄏(𐄐) *kátʔáp* ~ *kátʔákup* ~ *kátkup* adv. alone
 𐄂𐄑 *kán* v. pulverise, reduce to powder
 𐄂𐄒 *kám* adv. little bit
 𐄂𐄓 *ki* n. thread
 𐄂𐄓 *ki* v. claim, demand, assert
 𐄂𐄔𐄕 *kibri* v. twist, wind threads together
 𐄂𐄖𐄗 *kiríl* v. roll thread into a ball
 𐄂𐄘𐄙 *kiyâp* v. stitch together, quilt
 𐄂𐄚 *kít* v. snatch
 𐄂𐄛 *kor* v. wander, stroll
 𐄂𐄜 *kol* n. box
 𐄂𐄝 *kó* n. order
 𐄂𐄞 *kók* v. fence in
 𐄂𐄟 *kón* n. taste
 𐄂𐄠 *kón* n. side
 𐄂𐄡 *kón* v. let, allow
 𐄂𐄢 *kóng* n. branch
 𐄂𐄣 *kóm* n. money
 𐄂𐄤 *kóm* v. curdle, congeal
 𐄂𐄥 *ku* v. urge, impel
 𐄂𐄦 *kup* n. child, small
 𐄂𐄧𐄨 *kumdúng* adj. other
 𐄂𐄩𐄪 *kumthyóng* n. kite
 𐄂𐄫𐄬 *kursóng* adj. bright
 𐄂𐄭 *kúng* n. tree
 𐄂𐄮𐄯 *kúngbóng* n. tree stump
 𐄂𐄰𐄱 *kúmíng* n. appellation, name
 𐄂𐄲 *kúl* v. encircle, surround
 𐄂𐄳 *ke* v. try, attempt
 𐄂𐄴 *kyáng* v. freeze
 𐄂𐄵 *kyok* v. churn butter
 𐄂𐄶 *kyóng* n. village
 𐄂𐄷 *kyón* v. suffer
 𐄂𐄸 *kyóp* v. lock

ᄃᄆᄇ *kyól* v. blend, mix, confuse

ᄆ kh-

ᄆᄆ *khá* num. score

ᄆᄆᄆ *khák* v. choke

ᄆᄆᄆᄆ *khámri* sal. greeting

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *khámrimó* sal. greeting (more respectful than *khámri*)

ᄆᄆ ~ ᄆᄆᄆ *khu ~ khut* v. be able to

ᄆᄆᄆ *khú* n. loaf of bread

ᄆᄆᄆᄆ *khek* v. freeze

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *khyâ* v. arrive

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *khyú* v. bathe

ᄆᄆ kl-

ᄆᄆ *kla* v. cleave

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *klánlá* adj. resembling

ᄆᄆᄆᄆ *klít* v. polish, rub

ᄆᄆ *klo* adj. straightforward

ᄆᄆᄆᄆ *klóng* v. send

ᄆᄆᄆ ~ ᄆᄆᄆᄆ *klú ~ klúm* v. fall

ᄆᄆᄆ *klek* v. force, urge

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *klyam* v. be sweet

ᄆᄆᄆ kr-

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *krít* n. hunger

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *kró* v. slice

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *krón* v. scratch

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *kryóng* v. praise

ᄆᄆᄆᄆ g-

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *gâ* v. resist

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *gang* conj. if

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *gangne* conj. if

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *ganglá* even if

ᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆᄆ *gát* v. must, need, require

𐄂 *gán* adj. old, aged
 𐄂𐄃 *gánlát* n. oldness, old age
 𐄄 *go* pron. I
 𐄄 *go* v. be
 𐄄𐄅 *gorúng* conj. either
 𐄄𐄅𐄆 *gorúnglá* conj. although, even
 𐄇 *gó* v. be happy, rejoice, be glad
 𐄈 *gun* all, every
 𐄈 *gum* v. to be
 𐄉 -*gú* sf. female animal that has given birth
 𐄊 *gek* v. be born
 𐄊𐄋 *gek-lát* n. birth
 𐄌𐄍 *gyagármú* n. Indian
 𐄎 *gyó* num. one hundred
 𐄎 *gyó* v. quarrel
 𐄏 *gyú* n. skill, experience
 𐄐 *gye* v. win, gain the victory

𐄑 gl-

𐄒 *glí* adj. distinct
 𐄓 *glót* v. kindle, set fire to
 𐄔 ~ 𐄕 *glú ~ glúm* v. fall down
 𐄖 *glyat* v. sag, drop, decline, suspend (also spelt 𐄗 *glet*)

𐄘 ng-

𐄙 *ngâk* v. look, observe
 𐄚 *ngán* v. remain, sit
 𐄛 *ngánshet* n. seat
 𐄜 *ngár* v. slice
 𐄝 *ngol* adv. early
 𐄞 *ngók* v. grind
 𐄟 *ngú* n. fish
 𐄠 *ngút* v. cut, sever or divide with a knife
 𐄡 *ngún* v. become, happen, occur

C-

- 𑖇𑖇 *cang* v. foster, nourish
 𑖇𑖆 *cá* adv. just, a moment ago
 𑖇𑖆𑖇 *cáng* v. cross river
 𑖇𑖆𑖇𑖇 *cánáp* adv. last night
 𑖇𑖆 *cáp* v. thatch
 𑖇𑖆𑖆 *cábá* adv. some time ago
 𑖇𑖆 *cám* v. wink
 𑖇𑖆𑖇𑖇 *cálóng* adv. just now, just a moment ago
 𑖇𑖇 *ci* n. *cí*, fermented grain liquor
 𑖇𑖇 *cí* v. dry meat or fish in the sun
 𑖇𑖇 *cí* v. tread, tremble upon
 𑖇𑖇𑖇 *cík* v. weigh
 𑖇𑖇 *cíng* v. think
 𑖇𑖇 *cít* v. split wood or bamboo
 𑖇𑖇 *cíp* v. drain of liquids
 𑖇𑖇 *co* n. tea
 𑖇𑖇 *co* v. mend
 𑖇𑖇 *cot* v. assist, help
 𑖇𑖇 *com* v. oppress
 𑖇𑖇 *col* v. pour water over body
 𑖇𑖇 *cóng* v. wash
 𑖇𑖇 *cóng* v. be quick
 𑖇𑖇 *cóm* v. leave, depart
 𑖇𑖇 *cór* v. be sour, be acid
 𑖇𑖇 *cu* adj. small, little
 𑖇𑖇𑖇 *cukup* a little bit
 𑖇𑖇 *cup* v. restrain
 𑖇𑖇 *cú* n. the snowy range, the Himalayas
 𑖇𑖇 *cúk* n. kiss
 𑖇𑖇𑖇 *-cúng* young of bulls
 𑖇𑖇 *cút* v. rise of dough
 𑖇𑖇 *ce* n. love
 𑖇𑖇𑖇 *cechók* adj. loveable
 𑖇𑖇𑖇𑖇 *cewo* n. crore
 𑖇𑖇 *cek* v. hew, cut down
 𑖇𑖇 *cet* v. thrust, stab, pierce
 𑖇𑖇 *cep* v. bore, pierce

མྱོའ་མེད་པ་ *cer* v. be lazy

མྱོ་མེད་པ་ *cer* v. milk

མ ch-

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chádóng* n. war, battle

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chári* n. letter

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chí* n. example, model

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *cho* n. book

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *-cho* sf. best, greatest

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *choko* n. paper

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chokóng* n. offering of dough rice

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chokúng* n. brass lamp

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chochúk* v. copy, transcribe, reproduce

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chogyú* n. lesson

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chotân* n. essence of religion

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *choten* n. chörten, monument, memorial

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chodám* n. book binding

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chobúm* n. sacred scriptures of Buddhism

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chomí* n. religious lamp or light

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chotsóm* n. altar

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *choyântân* n. education

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *choyuk* n. literature

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *cholí* n. school

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *cholep* n. leaf of a book

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chó* v. unite, join

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chó* n. even number, pair, couple

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chómtun* n. friendship

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chór* v. pour

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chólúng nóngshang* v. multiply

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chú* n. strength, courage

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chú* n. cheese

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *-chúk* sf. most, worthy

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chúko* n. energy, force

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chúpí* n. sulphur

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chútsât* n. hour

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chúsung* n. crocodile

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chet* v. relate

མཆེད་མཆེད་པ་ *chet* n. need, want, lack, demand, necessity

ᄒ j-

- ᄒᄒ *jâl* v. dry over fire
 ᄒᄒᄒ *ják* v. itch
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jáng* adj. stiff
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jám* v. assemble
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jí* v. annoy, disturb
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jí* n. filth
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ ~ ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jí ~ jít* v. sift
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jók* v. talk, speak
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jóng* v. memorise
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jóp* v. flatten, make or become flat
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *ju* n. thorn
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jú* v. live, burn
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jek* v. bud
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jen* adj. other
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jer* n. gold
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *jel* v. understand, know a language, speak a language

ᄒᄒ ny-

- ᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyák* v. exceed
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyilop* n. earlobe
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyí* v. to be
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyín* n. milk
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyó* n. odd number
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyók* v. delay
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyók* v. cause to quiver, shake
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyót* n. field
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyóm* v. smell
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyuk* v. grind
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyum* n. pair
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyúgú* n. pen
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyúrpang* adj. deaf
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyet* num. two
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyet* v. show, demonstrate
 ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ *nyen* v. listen

t-

- 𐄂 *tân* n. cause, reason, behalf
 𐄂𐄃 *tândók* n. cause, reason, behalf
 𐄂𐄄 -*tâng* sf. corpulent male animal, pig or dog
 𐄂 *ta* v. bear, endure
 𐄂𐄅 *taʔayu* n. woman
 𐄂𐄆 *tabá* adv. up there, there above (also spelt 𐄂𐄆𐄇 *tábá*)
 𐄂𐄈 *tabók* n. abdomen, stomach, belly, womb
 𐄂𐄉 *tado* pron. oneself
 𐄂𐄊 *tagrí* n. man
 𐄂𐄋𐄌 *tagrikup* n. boy
 𐄂𐄍 *tagryú* n. cheek
 𐄂𐄎 *tarók* num. six
 𐄂𐄏 *tatsât* n. time, period of time
 𐄂𐄐 𐄂𐄑 *talon kón* adv. in the direction there above
 𐄂𐄒 *talol* adv. up above there
 𐄂𐄓 𐄂𐄔 *talemkón* adv. above there, in that direction (also spelt 𐄂𐄓 𐄂𐄔 *tálemkón*)
 𐄂𐄕 *talyáng* n. sky, heaven
 𐄂𐄖𐄗 *talyádâ* n. sea, ocean
 𐄂𐄘 *tahyut* n. whistle
 𐄂𐄙 *tasó* adv. yesterday, sometimes shortened to 𐄂𐄚 *só*
 𐄂𐄛 *taʔyu* n. girl
 𐄂𐄜𐄝 *taʔyukup* n. daughter
 𐄂𐄞 *taʔyen* adv. last year
 𐄂𐄟 *taʔi* n. flour, meal, powder
 𐄂𐄠 *tá-* pf. up there (also spelt 𐄂 *ta-*)
 𐄂𐄡 *táng* n. bundle
 𐄂𐄢 *tángko* n. basket
 𐄂𐄣 *tálom* adv. like that there above
 𐄂𐄤 *tállyáng* n. highland
 𐄂𐄥 *ti* num. zero
 𐄂𐄦 *tíng* v. separate
 𐄂𐄧𐄨 *tíngmú* n. plainsman
 𐄂𐄩 *tít* v. flee
 𐄂𐄪𐄫 *tít-rekúng* n. tamarind tree
 𐄂𐄬𐄭 *tít-repót* n. tamarind fruit
 𐄂𐄮 *tím* adj. big

- 𑌛𑌗 *tímre* n. respect
 𑌛𑌗 *tóm* n. speech
 𑌛𑌗 *tór* n. silk
 𑌛𑌗 ~ 𑌛𑌗 *tu ~ tut* v. wash, cleanse
 𑌛𑌗 *tuk* v. cover, protect
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *tuknóm* n. nose
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *tukfyíl* n. ant
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *tukpát* n. knee
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *tukpo* n. rope
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *tukpókúng* n. peach tree
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *tukpópót* n. peach
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *tungder* n. cockroach
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *tunghrók* num. thousand
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *tungvyeng* n. door
 𑌛𑌗 *tú* pron. who
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *túngchúr* num. hundred million
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *túdo* pron. anybody, anyone
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *túlá* pron. everyone, someone, anyone, whoever
 𑌛𑌗 *tet* v. touch, aim
 𑌛𑌗 -*tet* sf. until, up to (also spelt 𑌛𑌗 *tyet* or 𑌛𑌗 *tyat*)
 𑌛𑌗 *tyâng* all, whole
 𑌛𑌗 *tyât* v. cut down, hew down
 𑌛𑌗 *tyak* v. tread
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *tyal* v. fell (also spelt 𑌛𑌗 *tel*)
 𑌛𑌗 *tyók* v. cut
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *tyóng* v. hide
 𑌛𑌗 *tyól* n. friend
 𑌛𑌗 *tyu* v. subdue, defeat
 𑌛𑌗 *tyul* v. fall
 𑌛𑌗 *tyúk* v. kick
 𑌛𑌗 *tyút* n. scar

𑌛𑌗 tr-

- 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *trát* v. tear
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *trínchen* n. kindness
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *trókchí* thank you
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *tróp* v. winnow
 𑌛𑌗𑌛𑌗 *trút* v. advise

ᄃᄆ *tre* n. mule

ㅈ th-

- ᄃᄆᄆ *thangkú* n. tobacco
 ㅈ *thá* v. chew, eat
 ㅈ *thák* v. be complete, sufficient
 ㅈ *thám* n. thing, object
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thámčâng* n. animal
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thámbík* n. insect
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thámbóng* n. plant
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thámbu* n. worm
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thámpót* n. fruit
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thámlí* n. seed
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thámvyet* n. question
 ㅈ *tháp* v. put
 ㅈ *thál* adv. up above
 ㅈ ~ ㅈᄆ *thi ~ thút* v. reach
 ㅈᄆ *thík* v. tie
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thikúng* n. great grandfather
 ㅈ ~ ㅈᄆ *tho~thóm* v. put
 ㅈ *thok* v. close
 ㅈᄆ *thóng* v. drink
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thongjóm* n. toe
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thongpyól* n. footprint
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thongtung* n. heel
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thóngshet* adj. drinkable
 ㅈ *thop* v. get (also spelt ㅈᄆ *thúp*)
 ㅈ *thol* adj. near
 ㅈᄆ *thór* v. escape
 ㅈᄆ *thúk* n. season
 ㅈ *theng* v. sing
 ㅈ *thep* adj. extra, additional, successive
 ㅈᄆᄆ ㅈᄆᄆ *theppa theppa* adv. successively
 ㅈᄆᄆ *therbúm* num. billion
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thyák* v. recognise, identify
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thyáktuk* n. hat, cap
 ㅈᄆᄆ *thyákdám* n. scalp
 ㅈᄆ *thyen* v. laugh

- 𐌸𐌹𐌺𐌹 *thyenlât* n. laughter
 𐌸𐌹𐌺𐌹𐌶 *thyenlá* adv. laughingly
 𐌸𐌹 ~ 𐌸𐌹𐌶 *thyo ~ thyóm* v. hear
 𐌸𐌹𐌶 *thyók* n. shelter
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *thyór* v. set free
 𐌸𐌹𐌶 ~ 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *thyu ~ thyum* v. mix, combine, unite

𐌸𐌹 thr-

- 𐌸𐌹𐌹 *thri* n. throne
 𐌸𐌹𐌹𐌶 *thrim* n. law
 𐌸𐌹𐌹𐌶 *throm* n. town, market
 𐌸𐌹𐌹𐌹𐌹𐌹 *thrókthrik* num. ten billion

𐌸 d-

- 𐌸 *dâ* n. lake
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dâpúk* n. shore
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dâlyáng* n. island
 𐌸𐌹𐌶 *dâng* v. run
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dâl* v. germinate, sprout
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dá* v. sleep, rest
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dátho* n. almanac
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dáp* v. cover
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dám* v. tie, bind
 𐌸𐌹𐌶 ~ 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *di ~ dít* v. come, approach
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *díng* v. stand
 𐌸𐌹 *do* pron. self
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹𐌶𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dodosá* adj. personal, of ones own
 𐌸𐌹 *do* v. collect, gather together, assemble
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dok* v. be ill
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dop* v. burn
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dó* v. announce, make known
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dók* v. keep
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dóng* v. search, seek
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *du* n. disease
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dun* v. tell, narrate, say
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹𐌶𐌹 *dunlu* n. remark
 𐌸𐌹𐌶𐌹𐌶𐌹𐌶𐌹 *duntrók* n. week

- 𐄎𐄏 *dutmúng* n. demon
 𐄎 *dum* n. cloth
 𐄎 *dú* n. umbrella
 𐄎 ~ 𐄎 *dú ~ dún* v. dig
 𐄎 *dúk* v. be alike
 𐄎𐄏𐄐 *dúnggít* n. tradition
 𐄎 *dúm* v. be white
 𐄎 *de* v. destroy
 𐄎𐄏 *delúk* n. resurrection
 𐄎 *dek* v. break
 𐄎 *det* v. move
 𐄎 *dep* sf. together, along with
 𐄎 *dem* n. dress
 𐄎𐄏𐄐 *dyángtung* n. heel
 𐄎𐄏𐄐 *dyângpak* n. knee
 𐄎𐄏𐄐 *dyângpók* n. calf
 𐄎𐄏𐄐𐄑 *dyánglyók* n. sole of foot
 𐄎 ~ 𐄎 *dyu ~ dyut* v. argue

𐄎 dr-

- 𐄎 *drâm* adv. quick
 𐄎 *drám* v. break
 𐄎𐄏𐄐 *drámdyân* v. break down
 𐄎𐄏 *dri* n. fort, palace
 𐄎𐄏 *dri* v. wind, roll or coil thread
 𐄎𐄏 *dríp* v. confine
 𐄎𐄏 *dróp* n. moment
 𐄎 *dre* n. demon
 𐄎 *dret* v. push
 𐄎𐄏 *dryák* v. pursue, chase
 𐄎𐄏𐄐 *dryándo* adv. equal to

𐄎 n-

- 𐄎𐄏𐄐 *nâlá* adv. always
 𐄎𐄏𐄐 *nalón* adv. last
 𐄎𐄏𐄐 *navár* n. boat
 𐄎𐄏 *ná* v. take

ဂၢ် *nahán* adv. before
 ဂၢ် *nám* n. year
 ဂၢ်(၉) *námkor* n. cycle of twelve years
 ဂၢ်(၂) *námnám* adv. yearly
 ဂၢ်(၉) *nápmún* n. evening
 ဂၢ်(၉) *nápzâ* n. dusk
 ဂၢ်(၉) *náp-lúk* n. day and night, morning and evening
 ဂၢ် *nók* v. push
 ဂၢ်(၉) *nók-lât* n. blackness
 ဂၢ် *nóng* v. go
 ဂၢ် *nóng* adv. inside
 ဂၢ်(၉) *nómleng* n. young girl
 ဂၢ် *nól* n. skin
 ဂၢ် ~ ဂၢ် *nu ~ nut* v. suck
 ဂၢ်(၉) *numnu* n. brothers
 ဂၢ်(၉) *numtsám nyóm* n. leap month
 ဂၢ် *nup* v. flood
 ဂၢ် *núl* v. crush, knead

၂ p-

၂ *pâ* n. incense
 ၂(၉) *pâtmú* n. Tibetan
 ၂(၉) *pacák* adv. almost
 ၂(၉) *patung* n. shoulder
 ၂(၉) *pano* n. king
 ၂(၉) *pá* v. beckon, signal
 ၂(၉) *pár* v. buy
 ၂(၉) *pi* v. write
 ၂(၉) *pík* v. purify
 ၂(၉) *pín* v. brush, brush off
 ၂(၉) *po* n. bamboo
 ၂(၉) *pung* n. mound, heap
 ၂(၉) *punjeng* n. iron
 ၂(၉) *punthyóng* n. eagle
 ၂(၉) *punzók* n. forest
 ၂(၉) *pup* v. cover
 ၂(၉) *pe* n. grass
 ၂(၉) *pe* v. agree

- རྩ *pe-* adv. over there (also spelt རྩ *pí-*)
 རྩཏ *pefi* pron. there (near)
 རྩའ *pebá* pron. there
 རྩེ *petet* adv. up to that place over there
 རྩཎ *pepe* adv. that there, yonder
 རྩཏ *peme* adv. there, down there
 རྩཏ *pere* adv. that over there (also spelt རྩཏ *pír*, རྩཏ *pyir*, རྩཏ *pyur*)
 རྩཏ *pelom* adv. in that manner
 རྩཏ *pelom* adv. like that
 རྩཏ *pel* v. be tired
 རྩཏ *prâ* n. cut bamboo
 རྩཏ *promú* n. Bhutanese
 རྩཏ *prú* n. ash
 རྩཏ *prýá* n. hymn
 རྩཏ *prýá* v. describe, give an account of something

ཐ ph-

- ཐཏ *phám* v. defeat
 ཐཏ *phi* v. wash of utensils
 ཐཏཏཏ *philíngmú* n. Englishman
 ཐཏ *phúl* v. be distant
 ཐཏ *pho* n. time, turn
 ཐཏ *phu* v. offer, sacrifice
 ཐཏ *phet* adv. half
 ཐཏ *phyá* v. disjoin
 ཐཏ *phyok* v. sweep
 ཐཏཏ *phyokmú* n. broom
 ཐཏ *phyú* v. hatch
 ཐཏ *phyuk* v. be rich

པ pl-

- པ *plâ* v. come forth, come out, rise
 པ *plák* v. break
 པ *plí* v. deny
 པ *plyâ* v. produce, bring forward

Ɔ f-

- Ɔ(Ɔ) *fâtyók* n. pot
 Ɔ̃ *fâk* v. scrape
 Ɔɔ} *fangú* num. five
 Ɔɔʋ *fali* num. four
 Ɔ·ʋ *faleng* n. young boy
 Ɔ(fá v. swim
 Ɔ(*fát* n. earth
 Ɔ(*fát* v. lose
 Ɔ(*fán* v. burn
 Ɔ(*fár* v. rust
 Ɔ̃ *fík* v. tear, pull apart
 Ɔ *fo* n. bird
 Ɔ *fo* n. tooth (also Ɔ(Ɔ ʔáfo)
 Ɔ(Ɔ̃ *fogóm* n. molar
 Ɔ(Ɔ̃ *fonyel* n. gums
 Ɔ(Ɔ̃ *fozâl* n. incisor
 Ɔ(Ɔ̃} *folún* n. wisdom tooth
 Ɔ̃ *fók* adv. throughout
 Ɔ̃ *fók* v. pierce, stab
 Ɔ *fót* v. taste
 Ɔ(Ɔ)Ɔ *fungfing* adj. blue
 Ɔ(Ɔ̃ *fyo* n. brass
 Ɔ(Ɔ̃} *fyu* n. pot
 Ɔ̃ *fyek* v. sharpen

Ɔ fl-

- Ɔ̃ *flâ* v. narrate, describe
 Ɔ(Ɔ̃ ~ Ɔ̃(Ɔ̃ *flí ~ flím* v. divide, separate
 Ɔ̃(Ɔ̃ *flík* adv. apart, aside
 Ɔ̃(Ɔ̃ *flík* v. separate, cleave
 Ɔ̃(Ɔ̃ *flók* v. peel, peel off skin or bark
 Ɔ̃(Ɔ̃ *flet* v. wash ones face

Ɔ b-

- Ɔ̃ *bâk* v. weed

- ㄨㄛˊ *báhó* n. storage, store room
 ㄨㄛˊ *báng* v. break, cut, chop wood or bamboo in short pieces
 ㄨㄛˊ *-báng* num. half of
 ㄨㄛˊ *bám* v. dwell, stay, reside
 ㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊ *bámlyáng* n. homeland, residence
 ㄨㄛˊ *bán* n. knife
 ㄨㄛˊ *bán* adv. after
 ㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊ *bánkup* n. small knife
 ㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊ *bázá* n. hour
 ㄨㄛˊ *bál* v. repeat
 ㄨㄛˊ ~ ㄨㄛˊ *bi ~ bín* v. give
 ㄨㄛˊ *bi* n. curry
 ㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊ *bifong* n. green leafy vegetable
 ㄨㄛˊ *bík* n. cow
 ㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊ *bíkgú* n. cow
 ㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊ *bíkbo* n. bull, steer
 ㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊ *bíklóng* n. ox
 ㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊ *bíklóngbop* n. bullock, castrated male bovine
 ㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊ *bíklóngcúng* n. young bull
 ㄨㄛˊ *bíl* v. fold of cloth or paper
 ㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊ *bojo* n. grandfather
 ㄨㄛˊ *-bom* sf. brooding female animal
 ㄨㄛˊ ~ ㄨㄛˊ *bo ~ bón* v. give
 ㄨㄛˊ *-bop* sf. young of bulls
 ㄨㄛˊ *bu* n. snake, worm
 ㄨㄛˊ *bu* v. carry
 ㄨㄛˊ *-bu* sf. male of animals
 ㄨㄛˊ *buk* v. hit, strike, thresh
 ㄨㄛˊ *bun* v. carry
 ㄨㄛˊ *bul* v. scrape
 ㄨㄛˊ *búm* num. lakh
 ㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊ *búmtsho* num. lakh
 ㄨㄛˊ *búr* v. flower, bloom
 ㄨㄛˊ *búl* v. boil over
 ㄨㄛˊ *byám* v. keep, leave behind
 ㄨㄛˊㄨㄛˊ *byúp* v. parch, dry in fire
 ㄨㄛˊ *brám* v. stray, deviate, roam, be lost
 ㄨㄛˊ *bri* n. marriage, union
 ㄨㄛˊ *bret* v. separate, divide

ㄹ bl-

- ㄹ(ㄹ) *blá* v. take
 ㄹ(ㄹ) *-bo* sf. father, uncastrated male parent animal
 ㄹ(ㄹ) *blók* v. separate the outer and inner part of bamboo or cane
 ㄹ(ㄹ) *blen* v. be full, be filled up

ㅁ m-

- ㅁ(ㅁ) *mân* n. meat
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *maró* n. man
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *má* v. hide, conceal from sight
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *mák* v. die
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *mán-gú* n. sow
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *mát* v. do
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *mátlóm* n. conduct, act of conducting, guidance
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *máthu* n. habit, custom
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *mi* n. fire
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *-mi* sf. female animal that has not had young
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *míktráp* n. sleep
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *míkcóm* n. eyelash, eyebrow
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *míkgrúng* n. tear
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *míkdúm* n. foreigner (literally white eyes)
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *míkmyóng* n. eyelid
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *míl* adv. down
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *món* n. medicine
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *món* n. pig, boar
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *móntâng* n. fat boar
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *mónbo* n. boar, uncastrated male of swine
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *mónbu* n. boar
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *mónmi* n. fallow sow
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *mónmót* n. sow
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *mónsu* n. boar, uncastrated boar
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *mónsháng* n. barren sow
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *-mót* sf. female of animals
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *múng* n. devil
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *munjú* n. grandmother
 ㅁ(ㅁ) *muró* n. man

- མུ་མུ་ *muzu* n. body
 མེ་ *me-* adv. down there
 མེ་བའ་ *mebá* adv. there below
 མེ་བའི་ *mebí* adv. there below (less distant than མེ་བའ་ *mebá*)
 མེ་ལོ་ *melon* adv. in that direction down there
 མེ་ལོ་མེ་ *melom* adv. like that down there
 མེ་རེ་ *mere* adv. that down there
 མེ་ལ་ *myák* v. kill
 མེ་ལོ་ལ་ *myók* n. son in law
 མེ་ལོ་ག་ *myóng* v. experience
 མེ་ལོ་བ་ *myón* v. forget

མ ml-

- མུ་ལུ་ *mlú* n. utensil, implement
 མུ་ལ་ *mlyá* adj. level, even
 མུ་ལུ་ལ་ *mlyúk* adj. lukewarm, tepid

ཅ ts-

- ཅེ་ *tsám* v. hold
 ཅེ་ *tsóm* v. limit
 ཅེ་ལ་ *tsómcúng* n. pigtail
 ཅེ་ལྷ་ *tsómtrat* n. comb
 ཅེ་ལྷ་ *tsómrík* n. ribbon
 ཅེ་ལྷ་ *tsómbheng* n. single hair
 ཅེ་ *tsót* v. squeeze
 ཅེ་ *-tsu* sf. male of pigs and goats
 ཅེ་ལ་ *tsukgi* n. afternoon
 ཅེ་ལྷ་ *tsukkyer* n. west
 ཅེ་ལྷ་ *tsukkyer* n. sunset, west
 ཅེ་ལ་ *tsuk-lát* n. sunrise, east
 ཅེ་ལྷ་ *tsugyer* n. clock
 ཅེ་ལ་ *tsuknáng* n. midday
 ཅེ་ལ་ *tsukzán* n. early morning, when sun is completely visible
 ཅེ་ *tsung* v. save up
 ཅེ་ *tsum* v. meet
 ཅེ་ *tsur* v. radiate, gleam
 ཅེ་ལྷ་ *tsurtsur* n. twinkle

ᄃᄆ *tsúk* v. bite

ᄆ tsh-

ᄆ *tshâ* n. date

ᄆᄆᄆ *tshâlum* n. orange

ᄆᄆ *tshó* v. aim

ᄆᄆᄆ *tshóng* n. goods

ᄆᄆᄆ *tshóng* v. complete

ᄆᄆᄆᄆ *tshukpót* n. word

ᄆ Z-

ᄆᄆ *zâ* v. err

ᄆᄆ *zang* adj. like

ᄆᄆ *zá* n. circle

ᄆᄆᄆ *záko* n. planet

ᄆᄆᄆ *záti* n. nutmeg

ᄆᄆᄆ *záding* n. jug

ᄆᄆ *zo* v. eat, food, rice

ᄆᄆ *zok* v. trickle, flow

ᄆᄆᄆ *zorí* n. fragrant rice

ᄆᄆ *zók* v. strike

ᄆᄆᄆ *zómthup* adj. edible

ᄆᄆ *zót* v. graze

ᄆᄆ *zúk* v. make

ᄆᄆᄆ *zúkthup* adj. manageable

ᄆᄆᄆ *zúk-lât* n. action, performance

ᄆ y-

ᄆ ~ ᄆ *yâ ~ yâm* know, know how to

ᄆᄆ *yânthó* n. school

ᄆᄆ *yang* conj. thus

ᄆᄆᄆ *yángne* conj. or, either

ᄆᄆ *yáp* v. grope

ᄆᄆ *yok* n. top, summit

ᄆᄆ *yor* n. row

ᄆᄆ *yók* n. yak

ཅུ *yu* v. descend
 ཅུ *yuk* n. letter
 ཅུའི་ ~ ཅུའོ་ *yupthen ~ yuptho* n. moment
 ཇེ *yet* v. descend
 ཇེ *yel* v. know a language

༽ ༽-

ཇེ་ལོ་ ~ ཇེ་ལོ་ *rangsâ ~ rangsâr* adj. other
 ཇེ་ *râ* v. hunt
 ཇེ་ *râk* v. search, examine
 ཇེ་ *râm* n. thunder
 ཇེ་ *rî* n. smell, scent, fragrance, odour
 ཇེ་ཇེ་ཇེ་ *ribirîp* n. ribiplant, *Calamus latifolius*
 ཇེ་ *rîp* n. flower, blossom, flowering plant
 ཇེ་ *ro* v. fear
 ཇེ་ *rok* v. read, study
 ཇེ་ *róng* n. Lepcha
 ཇེ་ *róng* v. wait
 ཇེ་ཇེ་ *róngjîng* adv. daily
 ཇེ་ *ru* n. cane
 ཇེ་ཇེ་ཇེ་ཇེ་ *rungnyît rûngmû* n. main stream of *Rungnyît* river
 ཇེ་ *rûbâ* n. tortoise
 ཇེ་ *rum* n. god
 ཇེ་ཇེ་ *rumdâr* n. god
 ཇེ་ *rel* v. separate maize from the cob
 ཇེ་ *rel* adv. each
 ཇེ་ *ren* adv. since
 ཇེ་ཇེ་ *renjóng* n. Sikkim
 ཇེ་ཇེ་ཇེ་ *renjóngmû* n. Sikkimese
 ཇེ་ *ryâk* v. follow
 ཇེ་ *ryú* v. be good
 ཇེ་ཇེ་ *ryúlâ* adv. well
 ཇེ་ *ryúm* n. needle

ཇེ་ ༽-

ཇེ་ *lâm* v. fly
 ཇེ་ *lang* n. stone

- ႁႃႆႇ *langklyók* n. big flat stone
 ႁႃႆႇ *laháp* n. cave
 ႁႃႇ *lá* adv. also, even
 ႁႃႇ *lát* v. return
 ႁႃႇ *láp* v. bury
 ႁႃႇႆ *lávo* n. moon
 ႁႃႇ ~ ႁႃႆ *li ~ lín* v. say, speak
 ႁႃႇ *li* v. carry
 ႁႃႆ *lí* n. house
 ႁႃႆ *lík* v. call
 ႁႃႆႇ *línko* n. speech, statement
 ႁႃႆႇ *línshet* n. speech
 ႁႃႆ *lú* v. sift
 ႁႃႇ *lo* v. dry, spread out to dry in the sun of corn or grain
 ႁႃႇ *lok* v. dance
 ႁႃႇ *lon* in this direction
 ႁႃႇ *lol* v. bend, turn
 ႁႃႇ *ló* n. wage, pay
 ႁႃႇ *lók* v. damage, injure, harm
 ႁႃႇ *lóng* n. ox, steer
 ႁႃႇႆ *lóngbo* n. bull
 ႁႃႇႆ *lóngcúng* n. young bull
 ႁႃႇ *lón* lead, command
 ႁႃႇ *lóm* sf. via, through, n. road, way, v. walk
 ႁႃႇ *lót* v. repeat
 ႁႃႆႇ *lótbi* v. give back
 ႁႃႆႇ *lótthi* v. come back again
 ႁႃႆႇ *lóttho* v. put again
 ႁႃႆႇ *lótzúk* v. remake
 ႁႃႇ ~ ႁႃႆ *lú ~ lúm* v. rise
 ႁႃႇ *lúk* v. get up, rise
 ႁႃႇ *lúk* n. sheep
 ႁႃႇႆ *lúk-hróng* n. morning
 ႁႃႇႆ *lúkʔál* n. tomorrow
 ႁႃႇ *lúng* v. take
 ႁႃႇ *lúng* n. leisure, v. be free, have free time
 ႁႃႆႇ *lúngtár* v. develop, n. development
 ႁႃႆႇ *lúngten* n. tradition
 ႁႃႆႇ *lúngdi* v. bring

- ་ལྟོ་ལྷོ་ *lúgnóng* v. take, take away
 ་ལྟོ་ལྷོ་ *lúmkup* n. Nepali, person from Nepal
 ་ལྟོ་ *lút* v. skin, strip or deprive of skin, remove cover
 ་ལྟོ་ *len* adv. than, compared to
 ་ལྟོ་ *lem* sf. direction
 ་ལྟོ་ *lel* v. complete
 ་ལྟོ་ *lyâ* v. accept
 ་ལྟོ་ *lyáng* n. land
 ་ལྟོ་ *lyók* v. resemble, look like
 ་ལྟོ་ *lyók* v. turn, divert, reverse
 ་ལྟོ་ *lyót* v. free
 ་ལྟོ་ *lyú* v. erect
 ་ལྟོ་ *lyem* v. play

ཕ h-

- ་ཕ་ *há* v. scrape, skim
 ་ཕ་ *hák* v. carve in wood or stone
 ་ཕ་ལྷོ་ *hánlon* adv. not simultaneously (literally before and after)
 ་ཕ་ *hát* v. lose, leave behind
 ་ཕ་ *háp* v. shut
 ་ཕ་ *hík* n. chicken
 ་ཕ་ལྷོ་ *híkbom* n. female hen having chickens
 ་ཕ་ *híp* v. shave, scrape
 ་ཕ་ *hong* adj. hollow
 ་ཕ་ *hu* pron. he, she
 ་ཕ་ *hu* n. bee
 ་ཕ་ *heng* n. ginger
 ་ཕ་ *het* v. hurt, harm
 ་ཕ་ *hel* v. fill
 ་ཕ་ *hyol* v. mix, blend
 ་ཕ་ *hyóp* v. accompany
 ་ཕ་ *hyu* v. purify
 ་ཕ་ *hyúl* v. swallow
 ་ཕ་ *hráp* v. sew
 ་ཕ་ *hrík* v. tear
 ་ཕ་ལྷོ་ *hritsho* num. myriad
 ་ཕ་ *hro* v. come up
 ་ཕ་ *hróng* v. come up, arrive from a lower place or region

- ḥḥ *hrún* adj. hot, warm, spicy
 ḥḥ *hrúp* v. pick up
 ḥḥ *hreng* v. dry wood, meat or vegetables in the sun
 ḥḥ *hryá* v. pull
 ḥḥ *hryám* v. jerk
 ḥḥ *hryóp* v. cry

x hl-

- ḥḥ *hláng* v. harden, as yams
 ḥḥ *hláp* v. learn
 ḥḥ *hlápjóng* v. memorise
 ḥḥ *hlo* n. hill, peak
 ḥḥ *hlok* v. break, as eggs
 ḥḥ *hleng* v. cough
 ḥḥ *hlentóp* v. help
 ḥḥ *hlyám* v. shake, quiver

ḥ v-

- ḥ ~ ḥ *vâ ~ vâm* v. chant, sing
 ḥ *vâm* n. song
 ḥ *vá* v. throw, hurl, fling
 ḥ *ván* v. enter
 ḥ *vi* n. blood
 ḥ *vimân* n. kin, offspring, relatives (literally flesh and blood)
 ḥ *vík* n. soldier
 ḥ *vóm* n. salt
 ḥ *vyet* v. ask, inquire

ḥ sh-

- ḥ *shâk* n. louse
 ḥ *sháng* n. firewood
 ḥ *-sháng* sf. barren, sterile
 ḥ *shángdri* n. twig
 ḥ ~ ḥ *shi ~ shím* v. see
 ḥ *shíng* adj. drunk
 ḥ *shíng* n. garden

- ጸጅ *shíl* n. trap
 ጸጅ *shól* n. fox
 ጸጅ *shól* v. scatter
 ጸጅጸ ጸጅ *shúlá* pron. everything, anything, whatever
 ጸጅጸጸ ጸጅ *shúmátne* pron. why (also spelt ጸጅጸጸ ጸጅ *shúmátnu*)
 ጸጅጸ ጸጅ *shúmú* n. man
 ጸጅጸጸ *shenlá* conj. but
 ጸጅጸጸ *shezúm* n. assembly, congregation, association
 ጸጅ *sher* n. glass
 ጸጅ *sher* v. rot, decay
 ጸጅጸጸ *sherábú* n. hunter
 ጸጅጸጸ *sherbú* n. sherpa

ሠ S-

- ሠ ሠ *sâm* n. mind
 ሠጸ *saka* n. deer
 ሠጸጸ *sakagú* n. doe, female deer
 ሠጸጸጸ *sakamót* n. female deer, doe
 ሠጸጸጸ *sakatsu* n. buck, stag
 ሠጸጸ *sacák* n. leopard
 ሠጸጸ *sagi* n. power, strength
 ሠጸጸጸ *sagór* n. cliff
 ሠጸጸጸ *sagrám* adv. below
 ሠጸጸጸ *sagrek* n. throat, intestines
 ሠጸጸጸ *sangúng* n. lizard
 ሠጸጸጸ ሠጸጸጸ *sanyí sonáp* adv. day and night
 ሠጸጸጸ *sanyí* n. day, daytime (also spelt ሠጸጸጸ *sanyím* or ሠጸጸጸጸ *suknyím*)
 ሠጸጸጸጸ ሠጸጸጸጸ *sanyím phet ~ nyímphet* adv. midday
 ሠጸጸጸ *satet* pron. how much, how many
 ሠጸጸጸ *sathá* pron. when, at what time
 ሠጸጸጸጸጸ *sathálá* adv. always
 ሠጸጸጸጸ *sathang* n. tiger
 ሠጸጸጸጸ *sadu* adv. slowly
 ሠጸጸጸጸ *sader* n. thunder
 ሠጸጸጸጸጸጸ *sadermi* n. gun (literally thunder-fire)
 ሠጸጸጸጸ *saná* n. bear
 ሠጸጸጸጸ *sanóng* n. snow
 ሠጸጸጸጸጸጸ *sanóngjum* n. snow flake

- (ᄒᄡᆫ) *safyu* n. garlic
 (ᄒᄡᆫ) *safyum* n. breeze
 (ᄒᄡ) *sabá* pron. where
 (ᄒᄡᄡ) *sabálá* pron. everywhere
 (ᄒᄡᆫ) *sabur* n. musk deer
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡ) *saburgú* n. female musk deer
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡᄡ) *saburlóng* n. musk deer
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡᄡ) *samálkúng* n. toon tree, *Cedrela toona*
 (ᄒᄡᆫ) *satsuk* n. sun
 (ᄒᄡ) *sare* pron. which
 (ᄒᄡᄡ) *saróng* adv. today
 (ᄒᄡᆫ) *salem* adv. in what direction, whither, where
 (ᄒᄡᄡ) *salol* adv. which way, in which direction, whither
 (ᄒᄡᄡ) *salom* adv. how, like what
 (ᄒᄡᄡᄡ) *salomlá* adv. anyhow, anyway
 (ᄒᄡᆫ) *sahu* n. monkey
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡ) *savíng* n. stag
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡᄡ) *savínglóng* n. stag
 (ᄒᄡᆫ) *saʔár* n. goat
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡ) *saʔárgú* n. female goat
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡᄡ) *saʔártsu* n. goat, billy goat
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡ) *saʔyák* n. day, day and night
 (ᄒᄡᆫ) *sák* n. mind
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡᄡ) *sákcíng* v. think
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡᄡᄡ) *sáknyín* v. recollect
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡᄡ) *sákdi* v. feel
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡᄡ) *sáktsum* n. thought
 (ᄒᄡᆫ) *sám* num. three
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡᄡ) *sáryók* n. jackal
 (ᄒᄡ) *so* n. rain
 (ᄒᄡ) *so* num. one hundred
 (ᄒᄡᄡᄡ) *sonáp* n. night, night-time
 (ᄒᄡᄡᄡᄡ) *sonápphet* n. midnight
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡᄡ) *somyáng* n. rainy season
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡᄡ) *somyer* n. dusk
 (ᄒᄡᆫᄡᄡ) *sozóng* n. winter, cold, v. be cold
 (ᄒᄡᄡ) *soyá* num. million
 (ᄒᄡᄡᄡ) *solá* n. twilight
 (ᄒᄡᄡᄡ) *sosá* n. dry season

- (ᄒᄒᄒ) *sosóng* n. dawn
 (ᄒᄒᄒᄒ) *sosotsho* num. billion
 (ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ) *sosotshúr* num. ten billion
 (ᄒᄒᄒᄒᄒ) *sosoyá* num. hundred billion
 (ᄒᄒᄒᄒ) *so?âm* n. summer
 (ᄒᄒ) *só* adv. yesterday
 (ᄒᄒᄒ) *sósó* adv. lately
 (ᄒ) *sót* v. kill
 (ᄒᄒ) *sóm* v. breathe
 (ᄒ) *su* v. contain
 (ᄒ) *sung* n. story
 (ᄒ)(ᄒᄒ) *sungvogú* n. female buffalo
 (ᄒ)(ᄒᄒᄒ) *sungvolóng* n. wild buffalo
 (ᄒᄒᄒ) *sukdum* n. world
 (ᄒᄒᄒ) *sukmut* n. wind
 (ᄒ) *sut* v. purify
 (ᄒᄒ) *súk* v. pound, strike
 (ᄒᄒ) *sút* n. message

ᄒᄒ W-

- (ᄒᄒᄒ) *womú* n. spindle
 (ᄒᄒᄒ) *wómú* n. jackal
 (ᄒᄒ) *wó* n. tub
 (ᄒᄒᄒᄒ) *wúrdo* n. sling

ᄒ ᄒ-

- (ᄒ) *ʔyá* adv. formerly, a long time ago, in the days of old
 (ᄒ) *ʔyáp* v. chop
 (ᄒ) *ʔyo* adv. before, formerly, some time ago
 (ᄒᄒᄒ) *ʔyochám* adv. three days ago
 (ᄒᄒᄒ) *ʔyochót* adv. four days ago
 (ᄒ) *ʔyor* n. pitfall
 (ᄒᄒᄒ) ~ (ᄒᄒᄒᄒ) *ʔyotshóng* ~ *ʔitshóng* adv. day before yesterday, two days ago
 (ᄒ) *ʔyók* n. work, job, chore
 (ᄒ) *ʔyum* v. ripen, bring to maturity
 (ᄒ) *ʔyel* v. divert

- 𐄂𐄃 *ʔyen* adv. last year
 𐄂𐄄 *ʔân* and
 𐄂𐄅 *ʔákâ* n. hand
 𐄂𐄆 *ʔákán* n. hurry
 𐄂𐄇 *ʔákíng* n. front
 𐄂𐄈 *ʔákón* n. taste
 𐄂𐄉 *ʔákup* n. child
 𐄂𐄊 *ʔákyàng* adj. light, bright
 𐄂𐄋 *ʔákrím* adj. bitter
 𐄂𐄌 *ʔáklyam* adj. sweet
 𐄂𐄍 *ʔákhú* adj. expensive
 𐄂𐄎 *ʔágít* n. tribe
 𐄂𐄏 *ʔágó* n. joy, happiness
 𐄂𐄐 *ʔágek* n. birth
 𐄂𐄑 ~ 𐄂𐄒 *ʔágyáp ~ gyáp* adj. much, very
 𐄂𐄓 *ʔángpur* n. tunnel, opening
 𐄂𐄔 *ʔácálá* adv. still
 𐄂𐄕 *ʔácáng* n. back
 𐄂𐄖 *ʔácor* adj. sour
 𐄂𐄗 *ʔácum* adj. small
 𐄂𐄘 *ʔácún* adv. below, lower down, beneath
 𐄂𐄙 *ʔáce* n. love
 𐄂𐄚 *ʔáchú* adv. this down here, this down below
 𐄂𐄛 *ʔájóm* adj. easy, simple
 𐄂𐄜 *ʔányúr* n. ear
 𐄂𐄝 *ʔátâng* n. a fat male beast
 𐄂𐄞 *ʔáti* n. sole
 𐄂𐄟 *ʔátí* n. egg
 𐄂𐄠 *ʔátím* adj. big
 𐄂𐄡 *ʔátimmú* adj. big
 𐄂𐄢 *ʔátet* adv. this much, this many
 𐄂𐄣 *ʔátháng* adv. this up there
 𐄂𐄤 *ʔáthong* n. leg
 𐄂𐄥 *ʔáthól* adj. very near, very close
 𐄂𐄦 *ʔáthú* adv. this up over there, this up above there
 𐄂𐄧 *ʔáthyák* n. head
 𐄂𐄨 *ʔádók* n. pain
 𐄂𐄩 *ʔádúm* adj. white
 𐄂𐄪 *ʔádyáng* n. lower leg

- 𐄂(𐄃) 𐄂ádyút n. fight
 𐄂(𐄄) 𐄂ánók adj. black
 𐄂(𐄅) 𐄂ánóm n. elder sister
 𐄂(𐄆) 𐄂ánum n. younger brother
 𐄂(𐄇) 𐄂ápíl n. shadow
 𐄂(𐄈) 𐄂ápín adv. this on the other side
 𐄂(𐄉) 𐄂(𐄊) 𐄂ápín 𐄂ábon adv. on both sides, here and there
 𐄂(𐄋) ~ 𐄂(𐄌) 𐄂ápun ~ pun adj. near, close
 𐄂(𐄍) 𐄂áfi adv. this just here, this nearby here
 𐄂(𐄎) 𐄂áflik adj. some
 𐄂(𐄏) 𐄂áfo n. tooth
 𐄂(𐄐) 𐄂áfong adj. green
 𐄂(𐄑) 𐄂ábá adv. here, this here
 𐄂(𐄒) 𐄂ábi adv. here, this right here
 𐄂(𐄓) 𐄂ábo n. father
 𐄂(𐄔) 𐄂ábong n. mouth
 𐄂(𐄕) 𐄂ábon adv. on this side
 𐄂(𐄖) 𐄂ábek n. middle
 𐄂(𐄗) 𐄂ábryáng n. name
 𐄂(𐄘) 𐄂ámel n. hair
 𐄂(𐄙) 𐄂ámík n. eye
 𐄂(𐄚) 𐄂ámlem n. face
 𐄂(𐄛) 𐄂ámú n. mother
 𐄂(𐄜) 𐄂átsóm n. hair
 𐄂(𐄝) 𐄂ázóm n. rice, food
 𐄂(𐄞) 𐄂ázuk adj. pretty
 𐄂(𐄟) 𐄂áyu n. wife, woman joined in marriage to a husband
 𐄂(𐄠) 𐄂árí n. scent
 𐄂(𐄡) 𐄂áring n. language
 𐄂(𐄢) 𐄂árom n. fear
 𐄂(𐄣) 𐄂árum adv. far
 𐄂(𐄤) 𐄂áre pron. this
 𐄂(𐄥) 𐄂áryúm adj. good
 𐄂(𐄦) 𐄂ál adj. new
 𐄂(𐄧) 𐄂állát n. freshness, newness
 𐄂(𐄨) 𐄂álin n. speech, talk
 𐄂(𐄩) 𐄂álim adj. heavy
 𐄂(𐄪) 𐄂álóng adv. now, at this very moment
 𐄂(𐄫) 𐄂álóngbá adv. in a moment, in a little while

- 𐄎𐄏𐄐𐄑 *ʔálonglá* adv. still
 𐄎𐄏𐄒 *ʔálon* adv. in this direction
 𐄎𐄏𐄓 *ʔálom* adv. like this
 𐄎𐄏𐄔 *ʔálol* adv. this way, in this direction
 𐄎𐄏𐄕 *ʔálut* n. heart
 𐄎𐄏𐄖 *ʔálem* adv. in this direction, hither
 𐄎𐄏𐄗 *ʔályú* n. cat
 𐄎𐄏𐄘 *ʔáhret* n. bone
 𐄎𐄏𐄙 *ʔáhyâng* adj. cold
 𐄎𐄏𐄚 *ʔáhyur* adj. red
 𐄎𐄏𐄛 *ʔávyo* n. tibia
 𐄎𐄏𐄜 *ʔáshúm* adj. fat
 𐄎𐄏𐄝 *ʔásúm* adj. spicy
 𐄎𐄏𐄞 *ʔáʔít* n. origin, creation
 𐄎𐄏𐄟 *ʔáʔóm* n. radiance
 𐄎𐄏𐄠 *ʔík* adj. still
 𐄎𐄏𐄡 *ʔíng* n. younger sibling
 𐄎𐄏𐄢 *ʔíngngá* n. child
 𐄎𐄏𐄣 *ʔít* v. create
 𐄎𐄏𐄤 *ʔochú* adv. that down here
 𐄎𐄏𐄥 *ʔotet* adv. that much, this many
 𐄎𐄏𐄦 *ʔothá* adv. then, at that time
 𐄎𐄏𐄧 *ʔotháng* adv. that up there
 𐄎𐄏𐄨 *ʔothú* adv. that up over there
 𐄎𐄏𐄩 *ʔopín* adv. that on the other side
 𐄎𐄏𐄪 *ʔobá* adv. there
 𐄎𐄏𐄫 *ʔobon* adv. on that side
 𐄎𐄏𐄬 *ʔotshóng* adv. that day
 𐄎𐄏𐄭 *ʔolol* adv. that way, in that direction
 𐄎𐄏𐄮 *ʔolom* adv. like that
 𐄎𐄏𐄯 *ʔolon* in that direction
 𐄎𐄏𐄰 *ʔolem* adv. in that direction, thither
 𐄎𐄏𐄱 *ʔok* v. open
 𐄎𐄏𐄲 *ʔóng* n. boy
 𐄎𐄏𐄳 *ʔóngkup* n. small boy
 𐄎𐄏𐄴 *ʔót* v. pluck, as fruits
 𐄎𐄏𐄵 *ʔóm* v. shine
 𐄎𐄏𐄶 *ʔúng* n. water
 𐄎𐄏𐄷 *ʔút* n. otter

- ᄃᄂ ᄃᄂ n. horse
ᄃᄃ ᄃᄃ adj. ripe, sweet, tasty
ᄃᄄ ᄃᄄ v. sell
ᄃᄅᄆ ᄃᄅᄆ n. salesman, seller

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Benedict, Paul King 1943, 'Secondary infixation in Lepcha', *Studies in Linguistics* 1 (19), 1-2.
- Benedict, Paul King 1972, *Sino-Tibetan: A Conspectus*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Bodman, Nicholas Cleveland 1988, 'On the place of Lepcha in Sino-Tibetan. A lexical comparison', *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 11 (1), 1-26.
- Bodman, Nicholas Cleveland 1989, 'Some remarks on Lepcha vowels', in: David Bradley et al., *Prosodic Analysis and Asian Linguistics. To honour R. K. Sprigg*, Canberra: Pacific Linguistics, 137-141.
- Campbell, Archibald 1840, 'Note on the Lepchas of Sikkim, with a vocabulary of their language', *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal* 9, 379-393.
- Campbell, Archibald 1869, 'On the Lepchas', *Journal of the Ethnological Society of London new series* 1 (2), 143-157.
- Cemjong, Imansimha 1970-71 (VS 2026), *Lapca Nepali Angreji Sabdakos*, Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy.
- Chakraborty, Ashit Ranjan 1978, *Read Lepcha. An introduction to the Lepcha or Rong script and a self-instruction for reading the language*, New Delhi: C. Chakraborty.
- Chattopadhyay, Tapan 1990, *Lepchas and their heritage*, New Delhi: B.R. Publishing Corporation.
- Das, Amal Kumar and S.K. Banerjee 1962, 'The Lepchas of the Darjeeling District', *Bulletin of the Cultural Research Institute special series* 2, Calcutta, 1-168.
- Das, Kali Kumar 1896, 'The Lepcha people and their notions of heaven and hell', *Journal of the Buddhist Text Society* 4 (App. 1), 1-5.
- Driem, George Louis van 1987, *A Grammar of Limbu*, Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.

- Driem, George Louis van 1990, 'Review of La Langue Hayu by Boyd Michailovsky', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 53 (3): 565-571.
- Driem, George Louis van 1993a, *A Grammar of Dumi*, Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter.
- Driem, George Louis van 1993b, 'Einige Bemerkungen zum Aspekt im Limbu', *Linguistische Berichte* 148, 483-489.
- Driem, George Louis van 1998, *Dzongkha*, Leiden: Research School for Asian, African and Amerindian Studies.
- Driem, George Louis van 2001, *Languages of the Himalayas. An Ethnolinguistic Handbook of the Greater Himalayan Region*, Leiden: Koninklijke Brill.
- Drouin, E. 1901, 'Spécimen de textes lepcha', *Journal Asiatique* 9 (17), 558-563.
- Feer, Léon 1898 'Spécimen de la langue lepcha (ou rong)', *Journal Asiatique* 9 (12), 177-188.
- Foning, Arthur R. 1987, *Lepcha, my vanishing tribe*, New Delhi: Sterling Publications Ltd.
- Forrest, R.A.D. 1962, 'The linguistic position of Róng (Lepcha)', *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 82, 331-335.
- Gorer, Geoffrey 1938, *Himalayan Village. An Account of the Lepchas of Sikkim*, London: M. Joseph Ltd.
- Grierson, George A. 1909, *Linguistic Survey of India. Vol. III. Tibeto-Burman Family. Part I. General Introduction, Specimens of the Tibetan Dialects, The Himalayan Dialects, and the North Assam Group. Calcutta: Government of India*, Reprinted: Delhi, Varanasi, Patna. Motilal Banarsidass 1967.
- Grünwedel, Albert 1892, 'A Róng-English Glossary', *T'oung Pao* 3, 238-309.
- Grünwedel, Albert 1896a, 'Drei Leptscha Texte, mit Auszüge aus dem Padma-than-yig und Glossar', *T'oung Pao* 7, 522-561.
- Grünwedel, Albert 1896b, 'Ein Kapitel des Ta-she-Sung', *Festschrift für Adolf Bastian*, Berlin.
- Grünwedel, Albert 1897, 'Leptscha-Text mit Übersetzung', *Veröffentlichungen aus dem Königlichen Museum für Völkerkunde zu Berlin* 4 (Buddhistische Studien I), 118-126.
- Grünwedel, Albert, ed. 1898a, *Dictionary of the Lepcha Language*, Berlin.

- Grünwedel, Albert 1898b, 'Padmasambhava und Mandarava. Lep-tscha Übersetzung des Mandarava-Legende', *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft* 52, 447-461.
- Grünwedel, Albert 1913, 'Padmasambhava und verwandtes', *Baessler-Archiv* 3, 1-37.
- Haarh, Erik 1959, 'The Lepcha Script', *Acta Orientalia* (ed. Societates Orientalia Batavia Danica Norvegica) 24, 107-122.
- Hermanns, Father Matthias 1954, *The Indo-Tibetans*, Bombay: Fernandes.
- Hooker, Joseph Dalton 1855, *Himalayan Journals*, London: Ward, Lock & Co.
- Klafkowski, Piotr 1980, 'Rong (Lepcha), the vanishing language and culture of Eastern Himalaya', *Lingua Posnaniensis* 23, 105-118.
- Klafkowski, Piotr 1983, '...But they don't have any literature!' Or a few words on the Rong (Lepcha) heritage', in: Ernst Steinkellner and Helmut Tauscher, eds., *Contributions on Tibetan Language, History and Culture* (Proceedings of the Csoma de Körös Symposium held at Velm-Vienna, Austria, 13-19 September 1981, Vol. 1), Vienna: Arbeitskreis für Tibetische und Buddhistische Studien Universität Wien, 163-173.
- Kortlandt, Frederik 1984, 'Old Irish subjunctives and futures and their Proto-Indo-European origins', *Ériu* 35, 179-187.
- Kumar, Braj Bihari and G. Chiring 1978, *Hindi Lepca (Roñ) kosa*, Kohima: Nagaland Bhasa Parishad.
- Luksóm, Dóngtshen 1981, *Mútunci Róngthryum un Ríngtshuktóm. A Lepcha Grammar and Composition*, Gangtok: Department of Education, Government of Sikkim.
- Luksóm, Dóngtshen 1983, *Róng-Hindi-Ánggrezí tshukzât. Lepcha Hindi Angreji Sabdakos. Lepcha Hindi English Dictionary*, Gangtok: Textbook Unit, Directorate of Education of the Government of Sikkim.
- Mainwaring, George Byres 1876, *A Grammar of the Rong (Lepcha) Language as it Exists in the Dorjeling and Sikim Hills*, Calcutta.
- Matisoff, James Alan 1975, 'Rhinoglottophilia: the mysterious connection between nasality and glottality', in: *Nasálfest. Papers from a symposium on nasals and nasalization*, Edited by Charles A. Ferguson, Larry M. Hyman and John J. Ohala, Language Universals Project, Department of Linguistics, Stanford University, Stanford, California, 265-287.

- Michailovsky, Boyd 1975, 'A case of Rhinoglottophilia in Hayu', *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 2 (2), 293.
- Michailovsky, Boyd 1988, *La langue hayu*, Paris: Éditions du CNRS.
- Morris, J. 1938, *Living with Lepchas. A book about the Sikkim Himalayas*, London: Heinemann.
- Nebesky-Wojkowitz, René von 1952, 'Hochzeitslieder der Lepchas', *Asiatische Studien* (Bern) 6, 30-40.
- Nebesky-Wojkowitz, René von 1953a, 'Die Legende vom Turmbau der Lepcha', *Anthropos* 48, 889-897.
- Nebesky-Wojkowitz, René von 1953b, 'The religion of the Lepchas', *The Aryan Path* (Bombay), 24.
- Nebesky-Wojkowitz, René von 1956, *Oracles and Demons of Tibet. The cult and Iconography of the Tibetan Protective Deities*, The Hague: Mouton.
- Opgenort, Jean Robert 2004, *A grammar of Wambule. Grammar, Lexicon, Texts and Cultural Survey of a Kiranti Tribe of Eastern Nepal*, Brill's Tibetan Studies Library. Languages of the Greater Himalayan Region 2, Leiden: Koninklijke Brill.
- Perry, Cindy L. 1997, *Nepali around the world. Emphasizing Nepali Christians of the Himalayas*, Kathmandu: Ekta.
- Plaisier, Heleen 2003a, 'Lepcha', in: Graham Thurgood and Randy J. LaPolla, eds., *The Sino-Tibetan Languages*, Routledge Family Series 3. London and New York: Routledge, 705-716.
- Plaisier, Heleen 2003b, *Catalogue of Lepcha Manuscripts in the Van Manen Collection*, Kern Institute Miscellanea 11, Leiden: Kern Institute.
- Risley, Herbert Hope 1894, *The Gazetteer of Sikkim*, Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Press.
- Rutgers, Roland 1998, *Yamphu: Grammar, Texts and Lexicon*, Leiden: Research School for Asian, African and Amerindian Studies.
- Schott, Wilhelm 1881, *Über die Sprache des Volkes Rong oder Lep-tscha in Sikkim*, Abhandlungen der Königlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften in Berlin (Phil. Hist. Klasse) 5, Berlin: Königlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften.
- Shafer, Robert 1955, 'Classification of the Sino-Tibetan languages', *Word: Journal of the Linguistic Circle of New York* 11, 94-111.
- Sinha, Prabhakar 1966, *A Descriptive Grammar of Lepcha*, unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, Pune: Deccan College Post-Graduate & Research Institute.

- Shipmú, Úgen and Karma Lode Rigimú, Nakú Tshering Likmú, Dorji Wángdi Kunchudyángmú 1996, *An English to Lepcha Dictionary*, Gangtok: Lyángdók Kurmóm.
- Siiger, Halfdan and Jørgen Rischel 1967, *The Lepchas. Culture and religion of a Himalayan people* (Nationalmuseets Skriften, Et-nografisk række 11), Copenhagen: Gyldenal.
- Sprigg, Richard Keith 1966a, 'The glottal stop and glottal constriction in Lepcha and borrowing from Tibetan', *Bulletin of Tibetology* (Namgyal Institute of Tibetology, Gangtok, Sikkim) 3, 5-14.
- Sprigg, Richard Keith 1966b, 'Lepcha and Balti-Tibetan; tonal or non-tonal languages?', *Asia Major* new series 12 (2), 185-201.
- Sprigg, Richard Keith 1982, 'The Lepcha language and three hundred years of Tibetan influence in Sikkim', *Journal of the Asiatic Society* (Calcutta) 24, 16-31.
- Sprigg, Richard Keith 1983, 'Hooker's expenses in Sikkim, an early Lepcha text', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 46 (2), 305-325.
- Sprigg, Richard Keith 1986, 'The syllable finals of Tibetan loanwords in Lepcha orthography', *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 9 (1), 27-46.
- Sprigg, Richard Keith 1987, 'Rhinoglottophilia revisited: observations on the mysterious connection between nasality and glottality', *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 10 (1), 44-62.
- Sprigg, Richard Keith 1989, 'Oral vowels and nasalized vowels in Lepcha (Rong): as the key to a puzzling variation in spelling' in: Davidson, J.H.C.S., ed., *Contributions to South-East Asian linguistics: essays in honour of Eugénie J.A. Henderson*, London: School of Oriental and African Studies, 219-235.
- Sprigg, Richard Keith 1997, 'Lepcha orthography: An earlier and later stage', in David Bradley ed., *Tibeto-Burman languages of the Himalayas* (Papers in Southeast Asian Linguistics 14), Canberra: Pacific Linguistics, 175-182.
- Sprigg, Richard Keith 1998, 'Original and sophisticated features of the Lepcha and Limbu scripts', *Nepalese Linguistics* 15, 1-18.
- Start, William and Karl Gottlieb Niebel 1849, *The book of Genesis and part of Exodus in Lepshá*, Calcutta: Baptist Mission Press
- Start, William and Karl Gottlieb Niebel 1872, *The Gospel of John, in Lepcha*, Calcutta: Baptist Mission Press.

- Stocks, C. de Beauvoir 1925, 'Folklore and customs of the lap-chas of Sikkim', *Journal and proceedings of the Asiatic Society of Bengal* new series 21, 325-505.
- Támsáng, Khárpú 1978, *Róngríngthrim: A Grammar of the Lepcha Language*, Kalimpong: Lyángsóng Támsáng.
- Támsáng, Khárpú 1980, *The Lepcha-English Encyclopedic Dictionary*, Kalimpong: Mayel Clymit Támsáng.
- Támsáng, Khárpú 1982a, *Róng Chomíng ?ân Lâzóng*, Kalimpong: Mani Printing Works.
- Támsáng, Khárpú 1982b, *The Unknown and Untold Reality about the Lepchas*, Kalimpong: Lyángsóng Támsáng.
- Thakur, Rudranand 1988, *Himalayan Lepchas*, New Delhi: Archives Publishers.
- Waddell, Lawrence Austine 1892, 'Place and River-Names in the Darjiling District and Sikkim', *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal* 60, 53-79.
- Waddell, Lawrence Austine 1895, *The Buddhism of Tibet or Lamaism*, London: W.H. Allen.
- Waddell, Lawrence Austine 1899, 'The Lepchas or Rong and their songs', *Internationales Archiv für Ethnographie* 12, 41-57.

INDEX

ablative suffix (ABL)	71-79, 120-123
adhortative	81-82, 119-120
adjectives	39-41, 47, 86-87
adverbs	39-40
adversative conjunction	134-135
agreement	47, 97, 100
Aktionsart	116-119
alternative conjunction	133-134
approximative suffix	66
assertive particle (AST)	105-106
authoritative particle (AUTH)	126
auxiliary verbs	98
beneficiary	83-86
causatives	45-46
certainty particle (CRT)	129
comitative suffix	76-81
comparison	87-88
completive auxiliary (CMP)	119
concessive conjunction	136
conditional conjunction	135-136
coordinative suffix	132-133
dative suffix (DAT)	83-86
definite article (DEF)	54-59
discovery particle (DSC)	130-131
dubitative particle (DBT)	126-127
dynamic auxiliary	113
ergativity	121-123
exhaustive auxiliary (EXH)	118
factitive marker (FCT)	91, 115-116, 137-138
gerund	107-109
human plural suffix (PL.H)	48-54
imperative	107
imperfective	115

individuating suffix (IND)	59-60
inferential particle (IFR)	127-129
infinitive (INF)	109-111
instrumental suffix	73, 77
interrogative particle (Q)	66
lative suffix	73-75
locative suffix (LOC)	81-85, 119-120
manifoldness	49-51
mirativity	130
negation	106
non-human plural suffix (PL.NH)	48-54
non-preterite tense (NPR)	113-115
participle (PTC)	107-109
perfect auxiliary (PRF)	116-117
plurality	48-54
possibility particle (PSB)	127
preterite tense	111-112
progressive tense (PRG)	113
quotative particle	132
reification	116
reportative particle (REP)	131-132
request particle (REQ)	125
resultative auxiliary (RES)	117
rhinoglottophilia	15
supine	81-82, 97-100
topic marker	55
verb stems	97-100
word class	39